

DVD Architect™ Pro 5

Professional DVD and Blu-ray Disc™ Authoring

October 31, 2008

After DVD Architect™ Pro software is installed and you start it for the first time, the registration wizard appears. This wizard offers easy steps that allow you to register the software online with Sony Creative Software Inc. Alternatively, you may register online at <http://www.sonycreativesoftware.com/> at any time.

Registering your product will provide you with exclusive access to a variety of technical support options, notification of product updates, and special promotions exclusive to registered DVD Architect Pro users.

Customer service/sales

For a detailed list of Customer Service options, we encourage you to visit <http://www.sonycreativesoftware.com/support/custserv.asp>. Use the following numbers for telephone support during normal weekday business hours:

Telephone/Fax/E-mail	Country
1-800-577-6642 (toll-free)	US, Canada, and Virgin Islands
+608-204-7703	for all other countries
1-608-250-1745 (Fax)	All countries

Technical support

For a detailed list of Technical Support options, we encourage you to visit <http://www.sonycreativesoftware.com/support/default.asp>. To listen to your support options, please call 608-256-5555.

About your rights in DVD Architect Pro software

DVD Architect Pro software is licensed to you under the terms of the End User License Agreement. The End User License Agreement is first presented to you when you install the software. Please review the End User License Agreement carefully as its terms affect your rights with respect to the software. For your reference, a copy of the End User License Agreement for DVD Architect Pro software is located at <http://www.sonycreativesoftware.com/corporate/eula.asp>.

About your privacy

Sony Creative Software Inc. respects your privacy and is committed to protecting personal information. Your use of the software is governed by the Software Privacy Policy. A copy of this policy is incorporated into the registration process and you are asked to agree to its terms prior to accepting the terms of the End User License Agreement. Please review its contents carefully as its terms and conditions affect your rights with respect to the information that is collected by the software. For your reference, a copy of the Software Privacy Policy is located at <http://www.sonycreativesoftware.com/corporate/privacy.asp>.

Proper use of software

DVD Architect Pro software is not intended and should not be used for illegal or infringing purposes, such as the illegal copying or sharing of copyrighted materials. Using DVD Architect Pro software for such purposes is, among other things, against United States and international copyright laws and contrary to the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement. Such activity may be punishable by law and may also subject you to the breach remedies set forth in the End User License Agreement.

Legal notices

ACID, ACIDized, ACIDplanet.com, ACIDplanet, the ACIDplanet logo, ACID XMC, Artist Integrated, the Artist Integrated logo, Beatmapper, Cinescore, CD Architect, DVD Architect, Jam Trax, Perfect Clarity Audio, Photo Go, Sound Forge, Super Duper Music Looper, Transparent Technology, Vegas, Vision Series, and Visual Creation Studio are the trademarks or registered trademarks of Sony Creative Software Inc. in the United States and other countries. All other trademarks or registered trademarks are the property of their respective owners in the United States and other countries.

Apple Macintosh Audio Interchange File Format (AIFF) file format.

Apple® Macintosh® Audio Interchange™ File Format (AIFF) is a trademark of Apple, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

Apple QuickTime

Apple® QuickTime® application is a trademark of Apple, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

Blu-ray Disc

Blu-ray Disc is a trademark.

Dolby, Dolby Digital AC-3, and AAC encoding

This product contains one or more programs protected under international and U.S. copyright laws as unpublished works. They are confidential and proprietary to Dolby Laboratories. Their reproduction or disclosure, in whole or in part, or the production of derivative works therefrom without the express permission of Dolby Laboratories is prohibited. Copyright 1992 – 2008 Dolby Laboratories. All rights reserved.

Dolby®, the double-D symbol, AC-3®, and Dolby Digital® are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories. AAC™ is a trademark of Dolby Laboratories.

FLAC/Ogg File Formats

©2008, Xiph.org Foundation

Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

This software is provided by the copyright holders and contributors "as is" and any express or implied warranties, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose are disclaimed. In no event shall the foundation or contributors be liable for any direct, indirect, incidental, special, exemplary, or consequential damages (including, but not limited to, procurement of substitute goods or services; loss of use, data, or profits; or business interruption) however caused and on any theory of liability, whether in contract, strict liability, or tort (including negligence or otherwise) arising in any way out of the use of this software, even if advised of the possibility of such damage.

Macromedia Flash

Macromedia and Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Microsoft DirectX programming interface

Portions utilize Microsoft® DirectX® technologies. Copyright © 1999 – 2008 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

Microsoft Windows Media Technologies

Portions utilize Microsoft Windows Media Technologies. Copyright ©2008 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

PNG file format

Copyright © 2008. World Wide Web Consortium (Massachusetts Institute of Technology, European Research Consortium for Informatics and Mathematics, Keio University). All rights reserved. This work is distributed under the W3C Software License in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. <http://www.w3.org/Consortium/Legal/2002/copyright-software-20021231>.

Tagged Image File Format (TIFF)

Adobe Tagged Image™ File Format is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries. All rights reserved.

Targa file format

The Targa™ file format is a trademark of Pinnacle Systems, Inc.

Thomson Fraunhofer MP3

MPEG Layer-3 audio coding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson.

Supply of this product does not convey a license nor imply any right to distribute content created with this product in revenue generating broadcast systems (terrestrial, satellite, cable and/or other distribution channels), streaming applications (via internet, intranets and/or other networks), other content distribution systems (pay-audio or audio on demand applications and the like) or on physical media (compact discs, digital versatile discs, semiconductor chips, hard drives, memory cards and the like).

An independent license for such use is required. For details, please visit: <http://www.mp3licensing.com>.

Sony Creative Software Inc.

1617 Sherman Avenue

Madison, WI 53704

USA

The information contained in this manual is subject to change without notice and does not represent a guarantee or commitment on behalf of Sony Creative Software Inc. in any way. All updates or additional information relating to the contents of this manual will be posted on the Sony Creative Software Inc. Web site, located at <http://www.sonycreativesoftware.com>. The software is provided to you under the terms of the End User License Agreement and Software Privacy Policy, and must be used and/or copied in accordance therewith. Copying or distributing the software except as expressly described in the End User License Agreement is strictly prohibited. No part of this manual may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or for any purpose without the express written consent of Sony Creative Software Inc.

Copyright © 2008. Sony Creative Software Inc.

Program Copyright © 2008. Sony Creative Software Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Introduction	11
Welcome to DVD Architect Pro software!	11
System requirements	11
Installing DVD Architect Pro software	11
Getting help	12
Online help	12
Context-sensitive help	12
Help on the Web	12
Learning the DVD Architect Pro Workspace	13
Main window	13
Saving and recalling window layouts - Ctrl+Alt+D or Alt+D	13
Main window components	13
Toolbar	14
Project Overview window (Ctrl+Alt+1)	14
Workspace (Alt+0)	15
Editing toolbar (Alt+1)	16
Text bar (Alt+2)	16
Window Docking Area (F11)	17
Explorer window (Alt+3)	17
Themes window (Alt+4)	17
Buttons window (Alt+5)	18
Backgrounds window (Alt+6)	18
Compilation window (Alt+7)	18
Properties window (Alt+8)	19
Timeline window (Alt+9)	21
Playlists window (Ctrl+Alt+2)	22
DVD Scripts (Ctrl+Alt+3)	23
Crop and Adjust (Ctrl+Alt+4)	23
Getting Started	25
How it works	25
Rendering files for your project	25
Blu-ray Disc projects	25
DVD Projects	28
Starting a new project	29
Opening an existing project	30
Choosing your media files	31
Using Explorer window views	31
Downloading media from the Web	31
Previewing media files	31
Adding files to your project	31

Setting the disc start item	32
Adding introduction (first play) media	32
Setting your project properties	32
Disc properties	32
Copy protection	36
Regions	37
Mastering	37
Summary tab information	38
Optimizing your project.....	39
Determining whether menus and titles are compliant	39
Using the Optimize Disc dialog to fine-tune your project	40
Editing a media file's source project	42
Saving your project	43
Saving a copy of your project (Save As)	43
Creating a Menu-Based Project.....	45
Building menus.....	45
Adding a submenu	45
Adding a submenu from a file	46
Reapplying a file's layout to menu objects	46
Inserting pages	46
Adding pages	46
Deleting pages	46
Changing page order	47
Editing menu page properties.....	47
General	47
Background Media	48
End Actions	50
Remote Buttons	50
Color Sets	51
Adding titles.....	52
Inserting a picture compilation	52
Inserting a music/video compilation	52
Inserting a single-movie title	52
Editing title order	52
Adding graphics	53
Editing graphics properties.....	53
Transformations	53
Media	53
Color Sets	54
Inserting and editing text	54
Inserting text on a menu or page	54
Setting a menu's title text object	54

Formatting text	55
Editing text	55
Moving text	55
Setting loop points	56
Inserting a scene selection menu	56
Continuing playback after playing the selected scene (automatic scene selection menus)	56
Returning to the menu after playing the selected scene/chapter (manual scene selection menus)	57
Creating a scene selection only disc	57
Inserting a setup menu	58
Adding navigation buttons	59
Creating menu transitions	59
Creating custom menus	59
Using color sets	60
Editing a color set	60
Applying color sets	60
Changing an object's size	60
Resizing an object	60
Making all selected objects the same height or width	61
Cropping and adjusting video and graphics	61
Displaying the Crop and Adjust window	61
Using the toolbar	62
Crop and adjust properties	62
Cropping graphics	63
Crop and video effects keyframes	64
Adding keyframes	64
Deleting keyframes	64
Navigating between keyframes	64
Changing interpolation curves between keyframes	65
Moving keyframes	65
Editing crop settings	65
Viewing and editing media properties	66
Displaying the Media Properties window	66
Editing media properties	66
Opening in Graphics Editor	67
Moving and arranging objects	67
Changing the position of an object	67
Transformation keyframes	68
The Keyframe tool	69
Editing button order for a menu	70
Aligning objects in a menu	71
Automatically aligning objects based on current theme	71
Centering objects	71

Adjusting object spacing	71
Deleting objects	72
Enabling snapping	72
Snapping to the grid	72
Snapping to other objects	72
Snapping to safe areas	72
Using automatic button actions	72
Button properties	73
Transformations	73
Action	73
Media	74
Highlight	75
Navigation	76
Color Sets	76
Button Region	76
Copying and pasting attributes	77
The Navigation tool	78
Setting object order	79
Viewing object order	79
Changing object order	79
Creating a Music/Video Compilation	81
Adding a music/video compilation to a menu	81
Adding audio	82
Replacing an audio file	82
Adding and editing images or videos	82
Inserting images or videos	82
Replacing an image or video	83
Setting image stretching or scaling	83
Rotating an image	83
Adjusting brightness and contrast or editing the image	83
Adding and editing text	83
Adding text	83
Formatting text	84
Moving text	84
Deleting text	84
Setting thumbnail display	84
Music/video compilation properties	85
General	85
End Action	85
Remote Buttons	86
Slide	86
Color Sets	87

Creating a Picture Compilation	89
Adding a picture compilation to a menu	89
Adding and editing images	89
Inserting images	89
Replacing an image	90
Generating slideshow animation	90
Setting image stretching or scaling	91
Rotating an image	91
Adjusting brightness and contrast or editing the image	92
Setting display duration from the Picture Compilation Properties window	92
Setting display duration from the timeline	92
Inserting an empty slide	92
Adding and editing text	93
Adding text	93
Formatting text	93
Moving text	93
Deleting text	93
Inserting a graphic	93
Inserting audio	94
Setting thumbnail display	94
Picture compilation properties	94
General	94
Track Media	94
End Action	95
Remote Buttons	96
Slide	96
Color Sets	97
Creating Playlists	99
Adding a playlist to a menu	99
Adding a playlist without a link	99
Adding titles to a playlist	100
Deleting titles from a playlist	100
Rearranging titles in a playlist	100
Renaming a playlist	100
Playlist properties	100
General	101
End Action	101
Playlist Item	101

Creating a Single-Movie Disc or Title.....	103
Adding a movie title to a menu.....	103
Setting in and out points.....	103
Working with markers.....	103
Inserting scene/chapter markers.....	104
Inserting chapter markers.....	104
Inserting buttons-on-video markers.....	104
Renaming markers.....	105
Moving markers.....	105
Deleting markers.....	105
Loading markers.....	105
Saving markers.....	106
Media properties.....	106
General.....	106
Track Media.....	106
End Action.....	107
Remote Buttons.....	108
Color sets.....	108
Adding buttons to videos.....	109
Editing button order for a video.....	110
Animating buttons with keyframes.....	111
Adding Audio, Video, and Subtitles.....	113
Audio tracks.....	113
Adding audio tracks.....	113
Replacing audio in a track.....	113
Setting the audio track for timeline playback.....	114
Changing audio track colors.....	114
Video tracks.....	114
Adding video tracks.....	114
Adding video to tracks.....	114
Setting the video track for timeline playback.....	115
Changing video track colors.....	115
Video event properties.....	115
Subtitles.....	115
Adding a subtitle track.....	115
Adding subtitle text.....	116
Creating a graphic subtitle.....	117
Inserting a graphic subtitle.....	117
Importing subtitles from a file.....	118
Creating a subtitle (.sub) file with timecode-based subtitle events.....	118
Exporting subtitles.....	118
Creating subtitles from regions in a Vegas project.....	119
Adjusting subtitle event timing.....	119

Adjusting a subtitle event's length	120
Copying formatting across subtitle events	120
Setting a subtitle to display automatically	121
Editing a subtitle event's color set	121
Setting the subtitle track for timeline playback	121
Changing subtitle track colors	121
Subtitle properties	122
Subtitle Event	122
Transformations	122
Color Sets	122
Generating music with Cinescore	123
Generate a new soundtrack	123
Edit an existing soundtrack	123
Using Masks, Menus, and Themes	125
Creating custom masks	125
Thumbnail masks	125
Frame masks	126
Highlight masks	127
Creating custom menus and buttons using layered graphics	128
Naming requirements for layers	128
Creating a layered .psd menu	129
Creating custom menus and buttons using single-layer graphics	131
Working with themes	132
Applying themes	132
Choosing a theme	132
Applying a theme's alignment to menu objects	132
Deleting a theme	133
Creating custom themes	133
Exporting menu as a theme	134
Learning about positional and grid themes	134
Working with positional themes	134
Working with grid themes	135
Modifying grid layout properties	135
Using Scripting	137
Adding an existing script to a menu or title	138
Creating a script	138
Inserting a statement in a script	138
Appending a statement to a script	139
Removing a statement from a script	139
Rearranging statements in a script	139
Editing a script's statements in the Script Properties window	139
Testing a script	141

Renaming a script.....	142
Deleting a script	142
Setting a DVD start script.....	142
General Purpose Register Memories (GPRM)	143
System Parameter Register Memories (SPRMs)	143
Language codes	144
Region codes	145
Previewing Projects.....	147
Preview window	147
Preview toolbar	147
Previewing your project.....	148
Previewing on an external video monitor	148
Previewing video on a secondary Windows display	149
Previewing video on an external monitor via IEEE-1394	149
Preparing and Burning Your Project	151
Preparing and burning DVD projects	151
Preparing a DVD project	151
Burning a DVD project	152
Burning 8 cm discs to 12 cm discs	154
Writing a master for replication	155
Preparing and burning Blu-ray Disc projects	157
Preparing a Blu-ray Disc project	157
Burning a Blu-ray Disc project	158
Customizing DVD Architect Pro Software	161
Changing grid settings.....	161
Saving and recalling window layouts	161
Saving a window layout	161
Loading a saved layout	162
Adding a layout to the View > Window Layouts submenu	162
Removing a layout from the View > Window Layouts submenu	162
Deleting a layout from your computer	162
Using the toolbar	163
Hiding and displaying the toolbar	163
Reordering toolbar buttons	163
Adding buttons to the toolbar	163
Removing buttons from the toolbar	164
Setting DVD Architect Pro preferences.....	164
General tab	164
Video tab	165
Video Device tab	165

Editing tab	167
Display tab	168
Preview tab	168
Burning tab	168
Mastering tab	169
Shortcuts	171
Keyboard shortcuts	171
Project file	171
Magnification and view	171
General editing	172
Inserting objects and titles	172
Timeline window	172
Preview	173
Mouse shortcuts	173
Index	i

Chapter 1 Introduction

Welcome to DVD Architect Pro software!

DVD Architect™ Pro software has everything you need to create and burn professional DVDs and Blu-ray Disc™ projects on your computer. You'll be creating picture slideshows, single-movie discs, music/video compilations, and menu-based discs on your computer in no time!

System requirements

- Microsoft® Windows® XP or Windows Vista™
- 1 GHz processor
- 250 MB hard-disk space for program installation
- 1 GB MB RAM
- OHCI-compatible i.LINK® connector*/IEEE-1394DV card (for external-monitor preview)
- Microsoft Windows-compatible sound card
- Supported DVD-R/-RW/+R/+RW drive or BD-R/-RE drive
- Microsoft DirectX® 9.0c or later
- Microsoft .NET Framework 3.0 (included on application disc)
- Apple® QuickTime® 7.1.6 or later

Note: *Some features may require product registration.*

*i.LINK is a registered trademark of Sony Electronics, used only to designate that a product contains an IEEE 1394 connector. All products with an IEEE 1394 connector may not communicate to each other.

Installing DVD Architect Pro software

1. Place the DVD Architect Pro application disc in the drive. The setup screen appears (if AutoPlay is enabled for your DVD-ROM drive).

Note: *If you have disabled the AutoPlay feature, click the **Start** button and choose **Run**. Type D:\setup.exe, where D is the drive letter of your DVD-ROM drive, and follow the on-screen prompts to complete the installation.*

2. Click **Install**, and then follow the on-screen prompts to install the appropriate version of DVD Architect Pro for your computer.

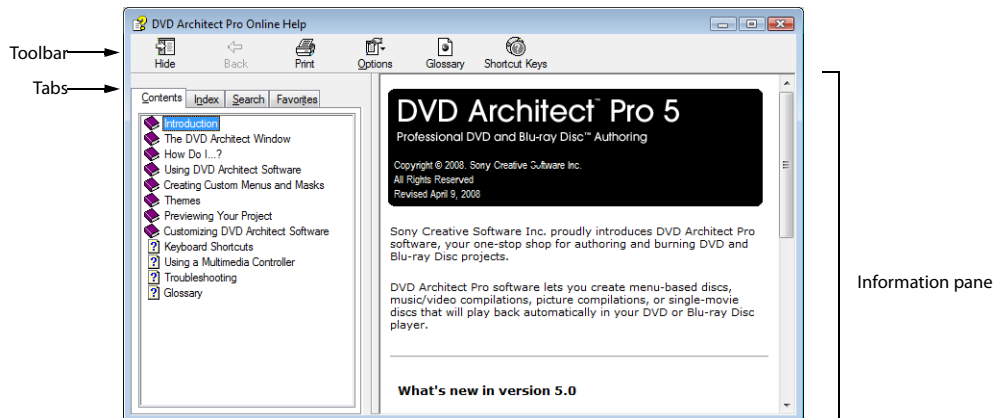
Getting help

You can access three types of help within DVD Architect Pro software:


- Online help
- Context-sensitive help
- Help on the Web

Online help

To access online help, choose **Contents and Index** from the **Help** menu or press F1.



Context-sensitive help

To use context-sensitive help in a dialog box, click the question mark button  in the upper-right corner of the dialog box.

Help on the Web

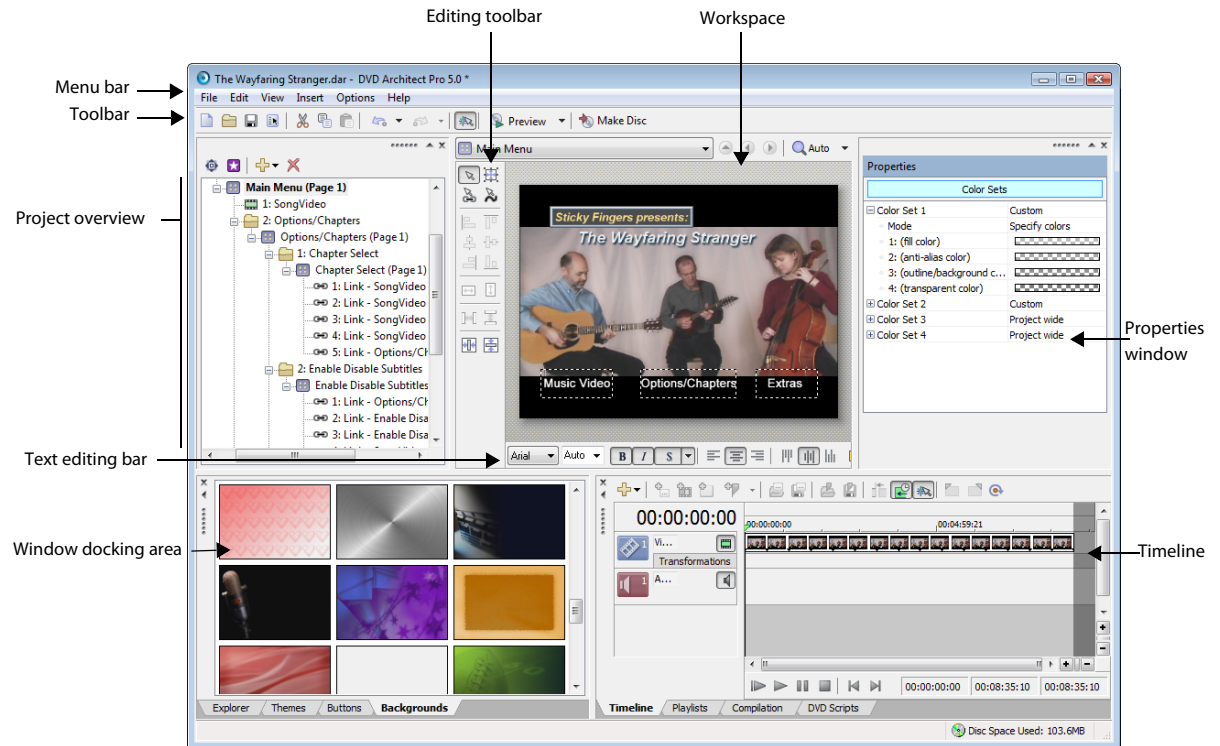
Additional DVD Architect Pro software help and information is available on the Sony Creative Software Inc. Web site. From the **Help** menu, choose **Sony on the Web** to view a listing of Web pages pertaining to DVD Architect Pro software and Sony Creative Software Inc. The software starts your system's Web browser and attempts to connect to the appropriate page on the Sony Creative Software Inc. site.

Chapter 2: Learning the DVD Architect Pro Workspace

DVD Architect™ Pro software is designed to make it easy to create a professional-looking DVD or Blu-ray Disc™. Many of the editing operations, commands, and shortcut keys are common to other popular software applications, as well as other Sony Creative Software Inc. applications.

Main window

When you start the application, the main window appears.



Saving and recalling window layouts - Ctrl+Alt+D or Alt+D

A window layout stores the sizes and positions of all windows and floating window docks in the DVD Architect Pro workspace. You can store up to ten window layouts so you can quickly recall customized layouts for specific editing tasks. For more information, see [Saving and recalling window layouts](#) on page 161.

Main window components

The work area is divided into four primary areas and is described in the following table.













Component	Description
Project Overview window	Where you assemble your project and can see the big picture.
Workspace	Where you edit menus and pages.
Properties window	Where you edit properties for media and objects in your project.
Window Docking area	Where you find media, themes, buttons, and backgrounds, and perform timeline editing on playlists, compilations, scripts, and titles in your project.

You can resize these sections by dragging the dividers between them or by pressing F11.

Press	Description
F11	Minimizes and restores the docking area at the bottom of the window.
Shift+F11	Maximizes and restores the left and right docking areas (Project Overview and Properties windows).
Ctrl+F11	Minimizes and restores the window docking area, Project Overview, and Properties windows.

Toolbar

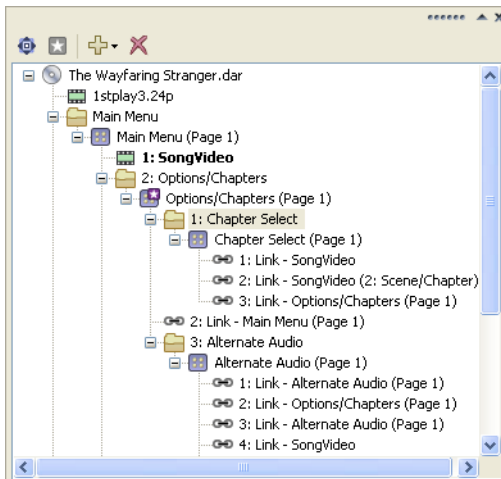
The main toolbar allows you to quickly access the most commonly used functions and features. To specify which buttons are displayed, choose **Customize Toolbar** from the **Options** menu. To toggle display of the main toolbar, choose **Toolbar** from the **View** menu.





	New Project: Creates a new project.		Paste: Pastes items from the clipboard into your project.
	Open Project: Opens an existing project.		Undo: Reverses the last command performed.
	Save Project: Saves the current project.		Redo: Reverses and Undo.
	Properties: Opens the Project Properties dialog.		Enable Snapping: Enables snapping to grid lines.
	Cut: Cuts selected events or time range.		Preview: Shows or hides the Preview window.
	Copy: Copies selected events or time range.		Make DVD/Make Blu-ray Disc: Opens the Make DVD/Make Blu-ray Disc wizard.

Project Overview window (Ctrl+Alt+1)

The Project Overview window provides a high-level view of the menus and titles in your project. You can use this window to arrange the menus and titles in your project and add or delete titles.

To toggle the display of the window, choose **Project Overview** from the **View** menu.



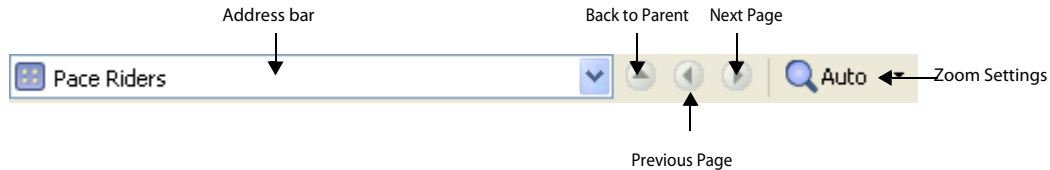
	Toggle Display of End Actions: Displays or hides end actions.		Insert Object: Show or hides the Insert Object drop-down list.
	Set Disc Start: Sets the selected menu or title as the disc start item.		Delete Object: Deletes the selected title or menu.

Workspace (Alt+0)

The workspace is the portion of the DVD Architect Pro window where you design your project. The workspace represents the currently selected menu or object.

To set input focus to the workspace for keyboard editing, choose **Focus to Workspace** from the **View** menu.

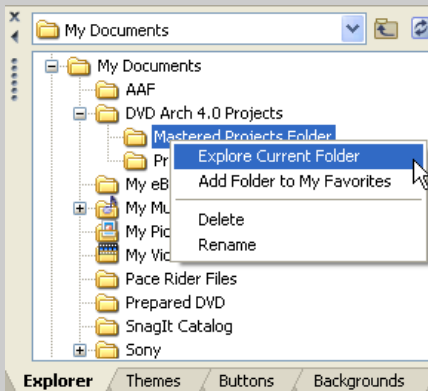
Across the top of the workspace, there is a toolbar that helps you navigate through your project and zoom in/out of the DVD Architect Pro workspace.



Address bar	With a drop-down menu, this allows you to navigate through the menus and titles of the parent folder.
Back to Parent	Allows you to navigate back to the parent folder of your project. Tip: You can also use the Backspace key.
Previous Page	Allows you to navigate back to the previous page in your project. Tip: You can also use the Page Up key.
Next Page	Allows you to navigate to the next page in your project. Tip: You can also use the Page Down key.
Zoom Settings	Click the down arrow next to the button to choose the magnification of the page in the workspace. When Auto Zoom is selected, the image will zoom to fit the current workspace size.

















Tip: To browse a file's current location on your drive or network, right-click the file in the Explorer window or in the DVD Architect Pro workspace and choose **Explore Current Folder** (or select the **Video** or **Audio** box in the Properties window, click the button, and then choose **Explore Containing Folder** from the menu) to open the Windows Explorer.

For more information, see [Explorer window \(Alt+3\)](#) on page 17.





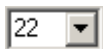








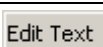

Editing toolbar (Alt+1)

The editing toolbar allows you to edit objects that you select in the workspace. To toggle display of this toolbar in the workspace, choose **Editing Toolbar** from the **View** menu.

	Selection Tool: Selects and moves objects.		Align Right: Aligns all selected objects to the right edge of the object that has focus.
	Sizing Tool: Selects and resizes objects.		Align Bottom: Aligns all selected objects to the bottom edge of the object that has focus.
	Navigation Tool: Verifies and edits which buttons will be activated when you press Up, Down, Left, or Right buttons on the DVD or Blu-ray Disc player remote control.		Make Same Width: Makes all selected objects the same width as the object that has focus.
	Keyframe Tool: Inserts a keyframe. Keyframes are used to animate objects by cropping them or changing their size or position.		Make Same Height: Makes all selected objects the same height as the object that has focus.
	Align Left: Aligns all selected objects to left edge of object that has focus.		Space Across: Adjusts the selected objects so an equal amount of horizontal space exists between the objects.
	Align Top: Aligns all selected objects to the top edge of the object that has focus.		Space Down: Adjusts the selected objects so an equal amount of vertical space exists between the objects.
	Align Horizontal Center: Aligns all selected objects to the horizontal center of the object that has focus.		Horizontal Centering: Aligns selected objects to the horizontal center of the screen.
	Align Vertical Center: Aligns all selected objects to the vertical center of the object that has focus.		Vertical Centering: Aligns selected objects to the vertical center of the screen.

Text bar (Alt+2)

The text bar allows you to edit various properties for text objects you select in the workspace. To toggle the display of the text bar, choose **Text bar** from the **View** menu.

	Font: Allows you to choose the typeface that will be used for text.		Justify Right: Aligns text to right edge of text box.
	Font Size: Allows you to choose the size (in points) of the typeface that will be used for text.		Justify Top: Aligns text to top edge of text box.
	Bold: Sets text in bold typeface.		Justify Vertical Center: Aligns text to vertical center of text box.
	Italic: Sets text in italic typeface.		Justify Bottom: Aligns text to bottom edge of text box.
	Shadow: Allows you to select position, color, and blurring of a shadow behind text.		Font Foreground Color: Allows you to set foreground color for text.
	Justify Left: Aligns text to left edge of text box.		Edit Text: Makes selected text box editable.
	Justify Center: Aligns text in center of text box.		

Window Docking Area (F11)

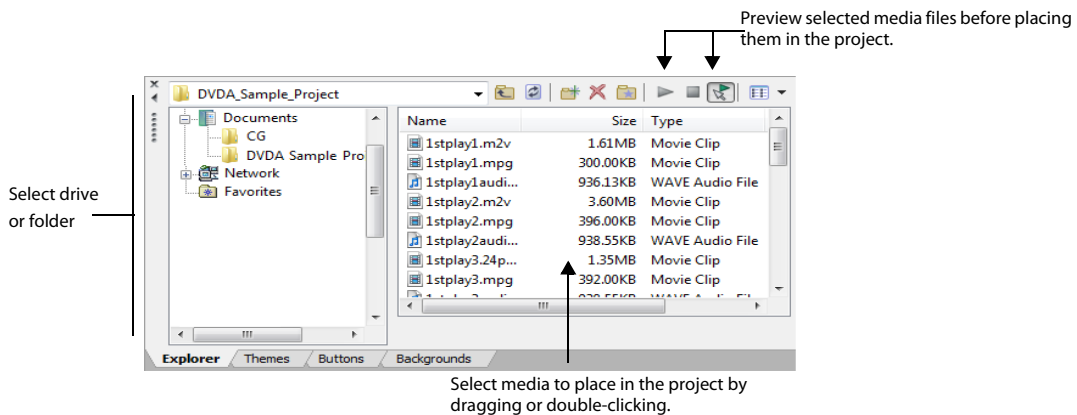
You can dock (anchor) windows around the edges of the DVD Architect Pro window to keep frequently used windows available, but out of the way, while you are working with a project.

You can dock several windows in the same area of the screen and the windows will be layered. Click a window's tab to bring it to the top.

Explorer window (Alt+3)

The Explorer window is similar to the Windows® Explorer. Use the **Explorer** tab to select media files to drag to the workspace or Project Overview window. From the **View** menu, choose **Explorer** to show or hide the Explorer window.

You can also use the Explorer to perform common file-management tasks such as creating folders, renaming files and folders, and deleting files and folders. Use the **Start Preview** ▶ and **Auto Preview** 🔍 buttons to preview files before adding them to the project. If you have the **Auto Preview** button selected, any video or graphic file you click in the Explorer will automatically display in the workspace.

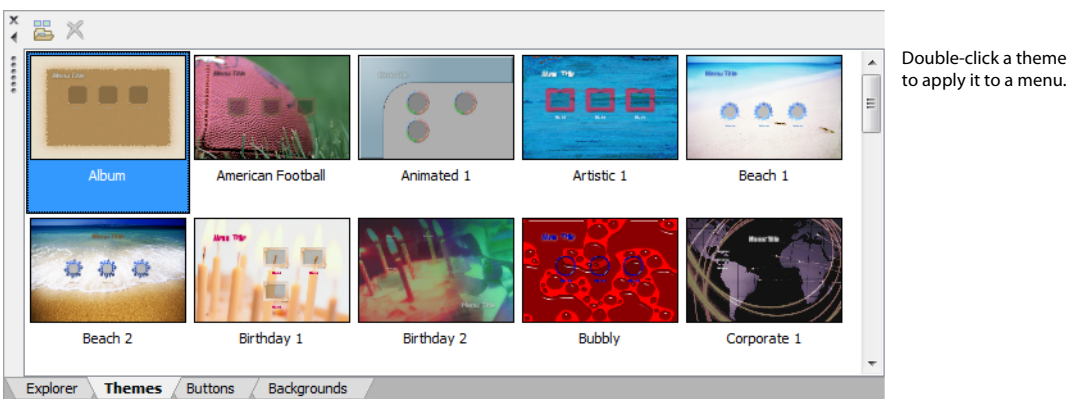


Themes window (Alt+4)

The Themes window is used to apply a theme to your menu-based project. From the **View** menu, choose **Themes** to show or hide the Themes window.

A theme is a style sheet for a menu page. Each theme can contain a background image, button type, layout style, button behaviors, text style, and embedded navigation behaviors. You can apply themes to specific menu pages as you work. Each new page you add to that menu will default to using the same theme.

DVD Architect Pro software includes some themes for you to use, and you can also create your own themes and apply them to your projects. For more information, see [Working with themes](#) on page 132.



Apply Theme: Allows you to apply themes to specific menu pages as you work.

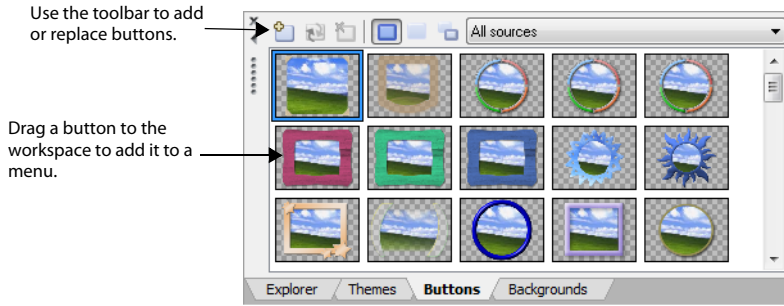





Delete Theme: Allows you to delete your own custom themes.




Buttons window (Alt+5)

The Buttons window displays buttons that are available from installed themes and from your DVD Architect Pro installation. From the **View** menu, choose **Buttons** to show or hide the Buttons window.

You can use the **Buttons** window to add new buttons to your menus, replace existing buttons, or remove frames from existing buttons.



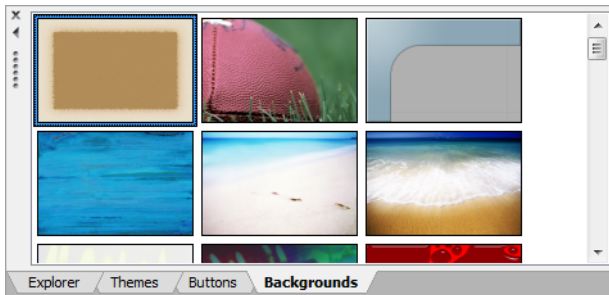
-  Insert Button: Adds the selected button (with no link) to the current menu.
-  Replace Button: Replaces the selected button in the workspace with the selected button in the Buttons window.
-  Remove Frame: Removes the frame from the selected button in the workspace.

-  Show Framed Buttons: Shows only buttons with frames in the Buttons window.
-  Show Non-Framed Buttons: Shows only buttons without frames in the Buttons window.
-  Show All Buttons: Shows buttons with or without frames in the Buttons window.

Backgrounds window (Alt+6)

The Backgrounds window displays menu backgrounds that are available from installed themes and from your DVD Architect Pro installation. From the **View** menu, choose **Backgrounds** to show or hide the Backgrounds window.

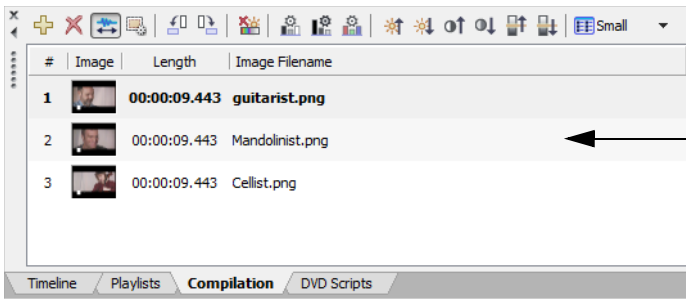
You can use the **Backgrounds** window to add a background to a menu page or change an existing background.




















Compilation window (Alt+7)

The Compilation window displays a listing of the items in a music/video compilation or picture compilation. From the **View** menu, choose **Compilation** to show or hide the Compilation window.

You can use this window to arrange the items in a compilation, set image stretching or scaling, rotate an image, or set a picture's display duration.

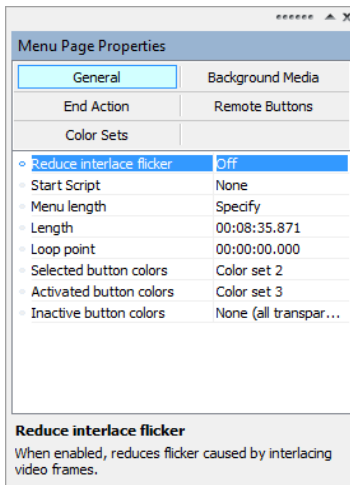


Drag items to rearrange, or right-click to display a shortcut menu with additional options.

- | | | | |
|---|--|---|---|
|  | Insert Item: Adds images to a picture compilation or audio, video, or still images to a music/video compilation. |  | Auto Level Channels: Automatically adjusts brightness and contrast. Adjustment is performed independently on each color channel. |
|  | Delete Items: Removes items from a compilation. |  | Increase Brightness: Increases the brightness of the image. |
|  | Fit compilation to audio: Automatically adjusts the duration of all slides to match the length of the audio file. |  | Decrease Brightness: Decreases the brightness of the image. |
|  | Generate Slide Show Animations: Allows you to pan, zoom, and/or crop pictures in a slideshow. |  | Increase Contrast: Increases the contrast of the image. |
|  | Rotate Counterclockwise: Rotates the image counterclockwise. |  | Decrease Contrast: Decreases the contrast of the image. |
|  | Rotate Clockwise: Rotates the image clockwise. |  | Increase Contrast Center: Adjusts the anchor point around which green contrast is adjusted. |
|  | Reset Effect Properties: Resets all effect properties. |  | Decrease Contrast Center: Adjusts the anchor point around which green contrast is adjusted. |
|  | Auto Levels: Automatically adjusts the brightness and contrast. The most abundant colors (either light or dark) are enhanced. |  | Thumbnail Size: Displays small, medium, or large thumbnail images. |
|  | Auto Levels (Dark): Automatically adjusts the brightness and contrast. The least abundant colors (either light or dark) are enhanced. | | |

Properties window (Alt+8)

The Properties window includes controls that you can use to edit nearly every detail of your project. From the **View** menu, choose **Properties** to show or hide the Properties window.



The contents of the Properties window change depending on the current selection. For example, if you have a menu open in the workspace, you can edit page properties and button properties. If you have a title open in the Timeline window, you can edit information about the media file.

Property	Description
Graphics	Edits the position, size, and appearance of graphical elements on a menu or compilation.
Button	Edits the action and appearance of the selected menu button.
Menu Page	Adjusts the length, background media, end actions, and remote control button behavior for the selected page.
Subtitle	Adjusts subtitle text positions and adjusts which color set is used to draw subtitle text.
Media	Adjusts the end actions and remote control button behavior for the selected media file.
Picture Compilation	Adjusts the end actions and remote control button behavior for the selected picture compilation.
Music/Video Compilation	Adjusts the end actions and remote control button behavior for the selected music/video compilation.
Playlist	Adjusts the settings for each item in a playlist or to set the end action for the selected playlist.
Video Event	Chooses the media file that will be used for events on the additional video tracks and adjusts color settings and cropping.
Script Properties	Adjusts settings for each statement in your DVD script.

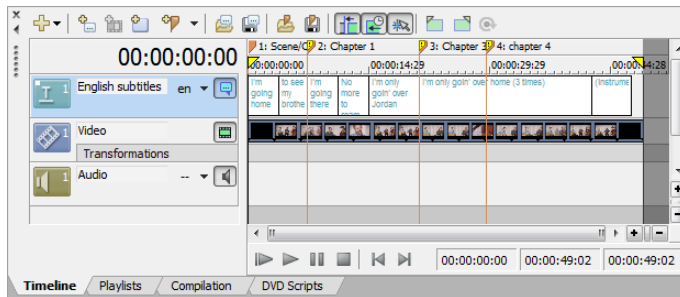























Scripting is not available for Blu-ray Disc projects.

Timeline window (Alt+9)

The Timeline window is a chronological representation of a video, picture compilation, music/video compilation, or the background media for a menu. From the **View** menu, choose **Timeline** to show or hide the Timeline window.

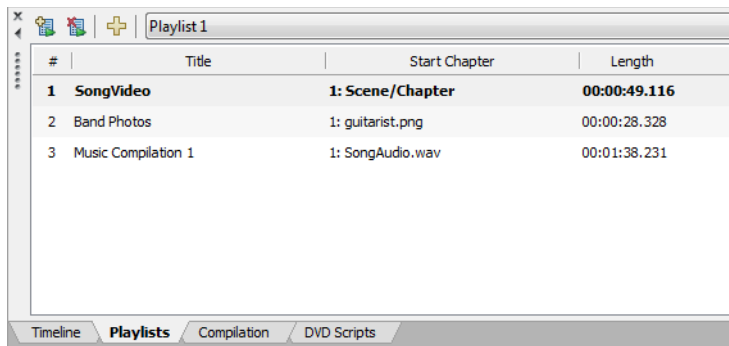
The timeline displays your main audio and video tracks, subtitle and additional audio tracks, chapter markers, and transport controls you can use to preview your media within the DVD Architect Pro workspace.



 Insert Track: Shows or hides the Insert Track drop-down list.	 Import Subtitles: Imports subtitles from a script file.
 Insert Audio Track: Adds an audio track to the current file.	 Export Subtitles: Exports subtitle content to a script file.
 Insert Video Track: Adds a video track to the current file.	 Load Markers: Loads markers from a file.
 Insert Subtitle Track: Adds a subtitle track to the current file.	 Save Markers: Saves markers to a file.
 Insert Subtitle Text Event: Adds a subtitle text event to the selected track.	 Auto Ripple: Toggles Auto Ripple mode.
 Insert Video Event: Adds a video event.	 Quantize to Frames: Forces events and markers to frame boundaries.
 Insert Button: Inserts a button into the workspace.	 Enable Timeline Snapping: Enables timeline snapping.
 Insert Scene/Chapter Marker: Inserts a scene chapter marker.	 Set In Point: Sets the in point for the title to the cursor position.
 Insert Chapter Marker: Adds a chapter marker.	 Set Out Point: Sets the out point for the title to the cursor position.
 Insert Buttons on Video Marker: Inserts a button on video marker.	 Set Loop Point: Sets the loop point to indicate the point where looped playback begins.
 Generate Music: Allows you to generate music for your project using Cinescore™.	

Playlists window (Ctrl+Alt+2)

You can use playlists to play a sequence of movies, chapter markers, music/video compilations, or picture compilations. A playlist can contain only titles that are part of the project, which are played from start to finish, and an end action determines what happens at the end of the playlist. From the **View** menu, choose **Playlists** to show or hide the Playlists window. *For more information, see [Playlist properties](#) on page 100.*



Insert Playlist: Adds a new playlist to your project.



Delete Playlist: Removes the current playlist from your project.



Insert Playlist Items: Displays the Select Title dialog where you can add titles to the current playlist.

Current playlist Allows you to choose the playlist that you want to display.

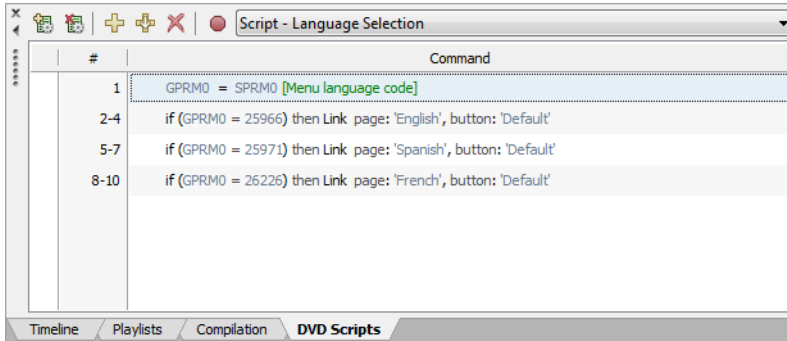
Playlist item list Lists the titles in the playlist.







DVD Scripts (Ctrl+Alt+3)

From the **View** menu, choose **DVD Scripts** to display the DVD Scripts window. You can use the Script Properties controls in the Properties window to adjust settings for each statement in your DVD script.



Scripting is not available for Blu-ray Disc projects.



Item	Description
 Insert DVD Script	Click to add a new DVD script to your project. For more information, see Creating a script on page 138.
 Delete DVD Script	Click to remove the current script from your project
 Insert Statement	Click to add a statement to your script. The Script Properties information is displayed in the Properties window, allowing you to choose your statement type and construct your statement.
 Append Statement	Click to add a statement to the end of your script. The Script Properties information is displayed, allowing you to choose your statement type and construct your statement.
 Delete Statement	Click to remove the selected statement(s) from your script.
 Toggle Breakpoint	Click to insert a breakpoint to the currently selected command(s) or label(s) in the script.
DVD scripts list	Choose an existing script from the drop-down list to specify the script you want to display.
Script statement list	Lists the statements in the script. You can drag statements within this area to rearrange them. You can use the Script Properties controls to set the statement type, commands, and conditions.

Note: Breakpoints are useful for debugging scripts. In the preview mode, breakpoints suspend playback and display the debugger area in the lower-left corner of the preview window, allowing you to step through the script in a certain area and then resume playback.

Crop and Adjust (Ctrl+Alt+4)

From the **View** menu, choose **Crop and Adjust** to display the Crop and Adjust window, where you can crop a video or graphic or adjust its appearance. You can set these changes to occur over time through the use of keyframes. For more information, see [Cropping and adjusting video and graphics](#) on page 61.

Chapter 3 Getting Started

This chapter details what you need to know to start authoring your project using DVD Architect™ Pro software.

How it works

The basic process for creating a DVD or Blu-ray Disc™ is essentially the same regardless of the type of project you choose to create. The steps listed below are discussed in more detail in the following sections:

1. Start a new project and specify the type of project you want to create (menu based, music/video compilation, picture compilation, or single movie).
2. Choose and add your media.
3. Preview your project.
4. Save your project.
5. Prepare and burn your project.

Rendering files for your project

To ensure that your project preparation and burning process goes smoothly, you should save your media files in the supported formats prior to bringing them into your DVD Architect Pro project. DVD Architect Pro software supports a wide variety of file formats, but some will require transcoding or recompression by the project-preparation process, lengthening the amount of time needed to complete this operation, and possibly resulting in degradation of quality.

Note: *The AVC, MainConcept™ MPEG-2, AC-3, and Wave/Wave64 encoders in Vegas® Pro provide templates that, if used without any modifications, result in files that do not require recompression (unless the file size is too large to fit on a disc).*

The settings to produce media files that do not require recompression follow.

Blu-ray Disc projects

You can burn Blu-ray Disc projects to BD recordable discs using the BDMV format:

- A 25 GB single-layer BD recordable disc can store approximately 3 hours, 42 minutes of AVC video (15 Mbps) or 2 hours, 15 minutes of MPEG-2 video (25 Mbps).
- A 50 GB dual-layer BD recordable disc can store approximately 7 hours, 25 minutes of AVC video (15 Mbps) or 4 hours, 31 minutes of MPEG-2 video (25 Mbps).

You can also burn high-definition video to a DVD for playback in a Blu-ray Disc player using the BDMV format:

- A 4.7 GB single-layer DVD recordable disc can store approximately 1 hour, 17 minutes of 8 Mbps AVC or MPEG-2 video, 40 minutes of 15 Mbps AVC video, or 26 minutes of 25 Mbps MPEG-2 video.
- An 8.5 GB dual-layer DVD recordable disc can store approximately 2 hours, 20 minutes of 8 Mbps AVC or MPEG-2 video, 1 hour, 10 minutes of 15 Mbps AVC video, or 46 minutes of 25 Mbps MPEG-2 video.

Notes: *Not all Blu-ray players can read DVD media. The PlayStation® 3 treats DVD media with Blu-ray content as a data disc. In order to play your media, you'll need to navigate to the BDMV folder on the disc and select the stream you want to play; interactivity — including menus, chapter markers, subtitle tracks, and alternative audio tracks — is not available.*

AC-3 audio (.ac3) for Blu-ray Disc projects

Sample Rate	Bit Rate	Channels
48,000 Hz	192 Kbps (64 Kbps to 640 Kbps is supported)	Stereo
48,000 Hz	448 Kbps (64 Kbps to 640 Kbps is supported)	5.1 surround

PCM audio (.wav or .w64) for Blu-ray Disc projects

Sample Rate	Bit Depth	Channels	Compression
48,000 Hz	16 or 24 bit	Stereo	Uncompressed
96,000 Hz	16 or 24 bit	Stereo	Uncompressed
192,000 Hz	16 or 24 bit	Stereo	Uncompressed

AVC video for Blu-ray Disc projects

If you're using Vegas Pro software, you can use the AVCHD rendering templates to render a compliant video file including 5.1 surround AC-3 audio.

Template Name	Frame Size	Frame Rate (fps)	Aspect Ratio	Max. Bit Rate
AVCHD NTSC 5.1 Surround	1440x1080	29.970	16:9	40 Mbps
AVCHD PAL 5.1 Surround	1440x1080	25	16:9	40 Mbps

If you're rendering with a different application, the following settings will produce compliant AVC media.

Frame Size	Frame Rate (fps)	Aspect Ratio	Max. Bit Rate
720x480	29.970 interlaced	4:3	40 Mbps
720x480	29.970 interlaced	16:9	40 Mbps
720x576	25 interlaced	4:3	40 Mbps
720x576	25 interlaced	16:9	40 Mbps
1280x720	29.970 interlaced	16:9	40 Mbps
1280x720	50	16:9	40 Mbps
1280x720	24.000	16:9	40 Mbps
1280x720	23.976	16:9	40 Mbps
1440x1080	29.970 interlaced	16:9	40 Mbps
1440x1080	25 interlaced	16:9	40 Mbps
1440x1080	24.000	16:9	40 Mbps
1440x1080	23.976	16:9	40 Mbps
1920x1080	29.970 interlaced	16:9	40 Mbps
1920x1080	25 interlaced	16:9	40 Mbps
1920x1080	24.000	16:9	40 Mbps
1920x1080	23.976	16:9	40 Mbps

MPEG-2 video for Blu-ray Disc projects

If you're using Vegas Pro software, you can use the Blu-ray rendering templates to render your video stream. You'll need to render your audio stream separately according to the parameters listed in the *AC-3 audio for Blu-ray Disc projects* or *PCM audio for Blu-ray Disc projects* sections above).

Template Name	Frame Size	Frame Rate (fps)	Aspect Ratio	Maximum Group of Pictures	Max. Bit Rate
Blu-ray 1920x1080-24p, 25 Mbps video stream	1920x1080	23.976	16:9	24	40 Mbps
Blu-ray 1920x1080-50i, 25 Mbps video stream	1920x1080	25	16:9	25	40 Mbps
Blu-ray 1920x1080-60i, 25 Mbps video stream	1920x1080	29.970	16:9	30	40 Mbps
Blu-ray 1440x1080-24p, 25 Mbps video stream	1440x1080	23.976	16:9	24	40 Mbps
Blu-ray 1440x1080-50i, 25 Mbps video stream	1440x1080	25	16:9	25	40 Mbps
Blu-ray 1440x1080-60i, 25 Mbps video stream	1440x1080	29.970	16:9	30	40 Mbps
Blu-ray 1440x1080-24p, 8 Mbps video stream	1440x1080	23.976	16:9	24	40 Mbps
Blu-ray 1440x1080-50i, 8 Mbps video stream	1440x1080	25	16:9	25	40 Mbps
Blu-ray 1440x1080-60i, 8 Mbps video stream	1440x1080	29.970	16:9	30	40 Mbps

If you're rendering with a different application, the following settings will produce compliant MPEG-2 video stream.

Frame Size	Frame Rate (fps)	Aspect Ratio	Maximum Group of Pictures	Max. Bit Rate
720x480	29.970 interlaced	4:3	30	40 Mbps
720x480	29.970 interlaced	16:9	30	40 Mbps
720x576	25 interlaced	4:3	25	40 Mbps
720x576	25 interlaced	16:9	25	40 Mbps
1280x720	29.970 interlaced	16:9	60	40 Mbps
1280x720	50	16:9	50	40 Mbps
1280x720	24.000	16:9	24	40 Mbps
1280x720	23.976	16:9	24	40 Mbps
1440x1080	29.970 interlaced	16:9	30	40 Mbps
1440x1080	25 interlaced	16:9	25	40 Mbps
1440x1080	24.000	16:9	24	40 Mbps
1440x1080	23.976	16:9	24	40 Mbps
1920x1080	29.970 interlaced	16:9	30	40 Mbps
1920x1080	25 interlaced	16:9	25	40 Mbps
1920x1080	24.000	16:9	24	40 Mbps
1920x1080	23.976	16:9	24	40 Mbps

DVD Projects

You can burn DVD projects to single- and dual-layer DVDs:

- A 4.7 GB single-layer DVD recordable disc can store over two hours of MPEG-2 video.
- An 8.5 GB dual-layer DVD recordable disc can store approximately 4 hours of MPEG-2 video.

AC-3 audio (.ac3) for DVD projects

Sample Rate	Bit Rate	Channels
48,000 Hz	192 Kbps (64 Kbps to 640 Kbps is supported)	Stereo
48,000 Hz	448 Kbps (64 Kbps to 640 Kbps is supported)	5.1 surround

PCM audio (.wav or .w64) for DVD projects

Sample Rate	Bit Depth	Channels	Compression
48,000 Hz	16, 20, or 24 bit	Stereo	Uncompressed
96,000 Hz	16, 20, or 24 bit	Stereo	Uncompressed

NTSC MPEG video (.m2p, .mp2, .mpg, .mpeg, .mpv)

If you're using the MainConcept MPEG-2 encoder in Vegas Pro software, use the **DVD Architect NTSC video stream** or **DVD Architect 24p NTSC video stream** template to render your video stream (you'll need to render your audio stream separately according to the parameters listed in the *AC-3 audio for DVD projects* or *PCM audio for DVD projects* sections above).

Template Name	Frame Size	Frame Rate (fps)	Aspect Ratio	Maximum Group of Pictures	Max. Bit Rate
DVD Architect NTSC video stream	720x480	29.970	4:3	36	9.8 Mbps
DVD Architect NTSC widescreen video stream	720x480	29.970	16:9	36	9.8 Mbps

If you're rendering with a different application, the following settings will produce a compliant NTSC MPEG-2 video stream.

Frame Size	Frame Rate (fps)	Aspect Ratio	Maximum Group of Pictures	Max. Bit Rate
720x480	29.97 or 23.976 + 2-3 pulldown	4:3	36	9.8 Mbps
704x480	29.97 or 23.976 + 2-3 pulldown	4:3	36	9.8 Mbps
352x240	29.97 or 23.976 + 2-3 pulldown	4:3	36	9.8 Mbps
352x480	29.97 or 23.976 + 2-3 pulldown	4:3	36	9.8 Mbps
720x480	29.97 or 23.976 + 2-3 pulldown	16:9	36	9.8 Mbps
704x480	29.97 or 23.976 + 2-3 pulldown	16:9	36	9.8 Mbps

Note: The MainConcept MPEG-2 encoder in Vegas Pro renders with the Low Delay flag turned off. If you're rendering with a different encoder, ensure Low Delay is turned off.

PAL MPEG video (.m2p, .mp2, .mpg, .mpeg, .mpv)

If you're using the MainConcept MPEG-2 encoder in Vegas software, use the **DVD Architect PAL video stream** or **DVD Architect PAL Widescreen video stream** template to render your video stream (you'll need to render your audio stream separately according to the parameters listed in the *AC-3 audio for DVD projects* or *PCM audio for DVD projects* sections above).

Template Name	Frame Size	Frame Rate (fps)	Aspect Ratio	Maximum Group of Pictures	Max. Bit Rate
DVD Architect PAL video stream	720x576	25	4:3	30	9.8 Mbps
DVD Architect PAL widescreen video stream	720x576	25	16:9	30	9.8 Mbps

If you're rendering with a different application, the following settings will produce a compliant PAL MPEG-2 video stream.





Frame Size	Frame Rate (fps)	Aspect Ratio	Maximum Group of Pictures	Max. Bit Rate
704x576	25	4:3	30	9.8 Mbps
352x576	25	4:3	30	9.8 Mbps
352x288	25	4:3	30	9.8 Mbps
704x480	25	16:9	30	9.8 Mbps

Note: The MainConcept MPEG-2 encoder in Vegas Pro renders with the Low Delay flag turned off. If you're rendering with a different encoder, ensure Low Delay is turned off.

Starting a new project

You can design your project to be as simple or as complex as you'd like, consisting of stills, video, and audio. Organization of these components is an important piece of the creation process. In the software, organization is handled by a project file (*.dar) that saves the relevant information about source file locations, insertion points, chapters, text, and more. This project file is not a multimedia file, but is instead used to create the final product when your editing is finished.

1. From the **File** menu, choose **New**. The New Project dialog is displayed.
2. On the General tab, click the type of project that you want to create:

Type of project	Description
 Menu Based	Produces a disc that displays a menu when played. Users can move through the menu items and select what they'd like to view. You can add any kind of media to a menu-based disc. In addition, you can add multiple menus and titles (music/video compilations, picture compilations, and movies). For more information, see Creating a Menu-Based Project on page 45.
 Music/Video Compilation	Produces a disc containing a compilation of audio or video files. You can choose a still image or video to associate with each audio file. Music /video compilations contain no menus, but users can skip forward and backward through tracks using their remote control. For more information, see Creating a Music/Video Compilation on page 81.
 Picture Compilation	Produces a disc that displays a slideshow of still images. You can choose one background audio track to play while the pictures are displayed. Picture compilations contain no menus, but users can skip forward and backward through pictures using their remote control. For more information, see Creating a Picture Compilation on page 89.
 Single Movie	Produces a disc containing a single movie. Single movies contain no menus or other media (aside from introductory video/audio, if desired). For more information, see Creating a Single-Movie Disc or Title on page 103.

- Choose the appropriate video setting from the **Disc format** drop-down list. This setting indicates whether you want to create a DVD or Blu-ray Disc.

Feature	DVD Projects	Blu-ray Disc Projects
DVD scripting (see Using Scripting on page 137)	✓	
Extras folder (see Extras folder on page 34)	✓	
Smart prepare (see Preparing a DVD project on page 151)	✓	
Parental control (see Parental control on page 35)	✓	
Region coding (see Regions on page 37)	✓	
Mastering (see Writing a master for replication on page 155)	✓	
Configuring the Menu remote-control button (see Remote Buttons on page 108)	✓	
Jacket picture (see Jacket picture on page 34)	✓	
Up to 32 buttons per 4:3 menu or 18 buttons per 16:9 menu (see Adding navigation buttons on page 59)	✓	
Up to 250 buttons per menu		✓
High-definition video (see Blu-ray Disc projects on page 25)		✓

- Choose the appropriate video setting from the **Project video format** drop-down list. This format is used for video that must be recompressed and for all menus in your project. *For more information, see [Adjusting video recompression settings on page 40](#).*
- Choose the appropriate audio setting from the **Project audio format** drop-down list. This format will be used for audio files that require recompression. *For more information, see [Adjusting audio recompression settings on page 41](#).*
- If your projects typically use these settings, select the **Start all new projects with these settings** check box.

Note: The project settings you chose in the New Project dialog can be changed at any time while you are working on a project, with the exception of the type of project you chose to create. To change any of these settings, choose **Properties** from the **File** menu.

- Click the **Summary** tab, and complete the information in the fields as desired. This information is saved with the project.

Field	Description
Title	Enter the title of the project.
Artist	Enter the name of the artist who performed in the project.
Engineer	Enter the name of the person who mixed or edited the project.
Copyright	Enter copyright information about the project.
Comments	Enter any comments you want to associate with the project.

Opening an existing project

- From the **File** menu, choose **Open**. The Open dialog is displayed.
- Locate and select the project (.dar) file you want to open.
- Click the **Open** button.


Tip: If media files cannot be located when you open a project, you can choose to leave the media offline and continue to edit your project. If you restore the source media file at a later time, the project will open normally.

Choosing your media files

You can use the Explorer window to find and add media files to your project. DVD Architect Pro software supports a wide variety of media files.

Note: DVD Architect Pro software includes support for many file types and can convert your media to the formats required for output as needed. However, for best performance (decreased disc preparation time and recompression), use existing rendered files. For more information about the types of files that can be used without recompression, see [Rendering files for your project](#) on page 25.

Using Explorer window views

You can control the information that is displayed in the Explorer window by clicking the **Views** button  and selecting a view.



View	Description
Tree View	Displays all of the available drives and folders that you may choose from to find files.
Summary View	Displays everything shown in the Tree View, but adds an area below the file list where summary information for the selected file is displayed, such as the file type and properties.
Details	Displays all the properties for each file. The information is presented in a table format. You can sort the files according to a category by clicking the column label for that category.
All files	Displays all file types in the selected folder.


Downloading media from the Web

You can also download media files from the Web for use in your project.

1. From the **File** menu, choose **Get Media from the Web**. Your Web browser starts and attempts to connect to the Internet.
2. Search for and download files to use in your project.

Previewing media files

You can preview media files from the Explorer window at any time before adding them to your project. To do so, simply click once on the file to select it, and then click the **Start Preview** button . To stop the preview, click the **Stop Preview** button .

You can enable automatic previewing of selected files by clicking the **Auto Preview** button . When this option is enabled, any file you select in the Explorer window is automatically previewed. To stop the preview, click the **Stop Preview** button. To disable this option, click the **Auto Preview** button again.

Adding files to your project

Once you've located a file you want to use, add it to the project using one of the following methods:

- Double-click the file.
- Drag the file from the Explorer window to the DVD Architect Pro workspace.
- Drag the file from the Explorer window to a menu in the Project Overview window.
- Drag the file from the Explorer window to the Compilation window.
- Drag a file from the Explorer window to the root folder in the Project Overview window. Dragging a file to the root folder adds the media to your project without creating a button on a menu.




You can use this unassociated media as a transition between menus via end actions or as a destination for button actions or the Menu button on the remote control.

Note: If you have a display device that is susceptible to burn-in (such as a rear-projection television), do not use static text or bright static graphics in any scene that will be displayed on screen for an extended period of time.


Setting the disc start item

The start item is the item that plays by default when your disc is played in a DVD or Blu-ray Disc player. In a menu-based project, for example, the main menu is typically your start item.



Note: If you have designated a DVD start script, the script will execute prior to the disc start item you set (scripting is not available for Blu-ray Disc projects).

1. Select an object in the Project Overview window.
2. Click the **Set Disc Start** button .
The start item is displayed as a  if it is an object and as a  if it is a menu.

Adding introduction (first play) media

Use the **Insert Introduction Media**  button in the Project Overview window to add a media file to your project and set it as your disc start item.

You could use introduction media to add copyright information or a corporate logo that is displayed before your disc starts playing.

1. Select an object in the Project Overview window.
2. Click the **Insert Object** button  and choose **Introduction Media**  from the menu. The Insert Media dialog is displayed.
3. In the Insert Media dialog, select the media file you want to use and then click **Open**.

The file you selected is set as the disc start item, and the previous disc start item is added to the new media file as an end action link. For more information about end actions for media, see [End Action](#) on page 107.

The start item is displayed as a  in the Project Overview window.

Setting your project properties

When you start a new project, you select various properties for the project. However, if you need to view those properties or make changes to them while you're working on the project, you can do so at any time by choosing **Properties** from the **File** menu. The Project Properties dialog is displayed containing two tabs: Properties and Summary.









If your projects typically use the same settings, select the **Start all new projects with these settings** check box at the bottom of the dialog.











Disc properties



You can use the controls on the Disc Properties page to adjust general settings for your disc.

Item	Description
Disc format	Choose a setting from the drop-down list to indicate whether you want to create a Blu-ray Disc project or a DVD project.
Target media size	Choose a setting from the drop-down list to specify the capacity of your media. This setting will be used to calculate how much space is available on disc. If you want to burn a Blu-ray Disc project to DVD media, choose 8.50 or 4.70

Tip: You can also change this setting by right-clicking the Disc Space Used display in the bottom-right corner of the DVD Architect Pro window and choosing a command from the shortcut menu.

Item	Description
Video defaults	<p>Displays the default video settings for your project. You can use the controls below the Video defaults row to adjust the settings. The default video format determines the following information about your project:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Whether a disc is NTSC or PAL. You cannot use both NTSC and PAL content on the same disc (DVD projects only). • The default frame size and aspect ratio for media that will be recompressed. You can use the Optimize Disc dialog to choose distinct recompression settings for each media file. For more information, see Optimizing your project on page 39. • The frame size and aspect ratio of all menus. All menus must use the same aspect ratio and resolution. <p>Tip: <i>The television frame rate in the US, North and Central America, parts of South America, and Japan (NTSC) is 29.97 frames per second (fps). In many parts of the world, including Europe and much of Asia, the television standard is PAL at 25 fps. France, Russia, and most of Eastern Europe use SECAM, which is a variation on PAL and also uses 25 fps.</i></p>
Video format	<p>If you're creating a DVD project, the video format is always MPEG-2.</p> <p>If you're creating a Blu-ray Disc project, you can choose whether you want to use MPEG-2 or AVC video.</p>
Bit rate	<p>Select the control, click the  button, and drag the slider to adjust the size of your project:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 9.8 Mbps is the maximum bit rate for DVD players. • 28 Mbps is the maximum bit rate for Blu-ray Disc projects burned to DVD media. • 48 Mbps is the maximum bit rate for Blu-ray Disc projects burned to Blu-ray media. <p>Increasing the bit rate can improve quality, but you can fit less media on the disc.</p> <p>Decreasing the bit rate can allow you to fit more video on the disc, but quality will be decreased.</p>
Aspect Ratio	<p>Select the control, click the  button, and choose a setting to indicate whether you want to create a standard-aspect (4:3) or widescreen (16:9) project.</p>
Resolution	<p>Select the control, click the  button, and choose a setting to indicate the default frame size of your project.</p>
Frame rate	<p>Select the control, click the  button, and choose a setting to indicate the default frame rate for your project.</p>
Progressive	<p>Indicates whether the selected frame rate is a progressive-scan format.</p>
Audio defaults	<p>Displays the default audio settings for your project. You can use the controls below the Audio defaults row to adjust the settings that will be used for audio that will be recompressed.</p> <p>You can select a title and use the Audio settings in the Optimize Disc dialog to choose distinct recompression settings for each media file.</p>
Audio format	<p>Select the control, click the  button, and choose a setting to indicate the format whether you want to use PCM stereo audio, AC-3 Stereo audio, or AC-3 5.1-surround audio.</p>
Bit rate (AC-3 only)	<p>If your audio format is AC-3, select the control, click the  button, and choose a setting to indicate the bit rate for your audio.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DVD projects can use a bit rate of 96 Kbps to 448 Kbps. • Blu-ray Disc projects can use a bit rate of 96 Kbps to 640 Kbps.
Bit depth (PCM only)	<p>If your audio format is PCM, select the control, click the  button, and choose a setting to indicate the number of bits used to represent each audio sample.</p>
Sample rate (PCM only)	<p>If your audio format is PCM, select the control, click the  button, and choose a setting to indicate the sample rate for your audio.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DVD projects can use a sample rate of 48 KHz or 96 KHz. • Blu-ray Disc projects can use a sample rate of 48 KHz, 96 KHz, or 192 KHz.
Last prepare folder	<p>Displays the path to the folder that was most recently used to prepare your project. <i>For more information, see Preparing a DVD project on page 151.</i></p>
Last mastering output folder	<p>Displays the path to the folder that was most recently used to master a DVD project. <i>For more information, see Writing a master for replication on page 155.</i></p>
Last prepare image	<p>Displays the path to the .iso file that was created the last time you prepared a Blu-ray Disc project. <i>For more information, see Preparing a Blu-ray Disc project on page 157.</i></p>

Item	Description
Initial audio track	<p>Select the control, click the  button, and choose which audio stream will be played when the disc is inserted into the DVD or Blu-ray Disc player.</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If you choose Default, the DVD or Blu-ray Disc player will attempt to determine the appropriate default audio track. If the player cannot determine the correct language, the first track is used. If multiple tracks match the player's language setting if you have an English dialogue track and an English commentary track, for example the first track that matches the player's language is used. The viewer can choose which track is played during playback. • If you choose a track that does not exist in your project, the initial track will default to the first audio track.
Initial subtitle track	<p>Select the control, click the  button, and choose which subtitle stream will be played when the disc is inserted into the DVD or Blu-ray Disc player.</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If you choose Default, the DVD or Blu-ray Disc player will attempt to determine the appropriate default track. If the player cannot determine the correct language, the first track is used. If multiple tracks match the player's language setting, the first track that matches the player's language is used. The viewer can choose which track is played during playback. • If you choose a track that does not exist in your project, the initial track will default to the first subtitle track.
Initial video angle	<p>Select the control, click the  button, and choose which video angle will be played when the disc is inserted into the DVD or Blu-ray Disc player.</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If you choose Default, the DVD or Blu-ray Disc player will attempt to determine the appropriate default track. The viewer can choose which track is played during playback. • If you choose a track that does not exist in your project, the initial track will default to the first video track.
DVD-only features	The Extras folder , Jacket picture , DVD start script , and Parental control settings are available only when creating a DVD project.
Extras folder	<p>If you want to burn DVD-ROM content to your disc, type the path to the folder that contains the files you want to include (or select the box and click the Change Media button  to choose a folder).</p> <p>When you choose a folder, all files within that folder will be written to the root of your project. If you want to place the content in a subfolder at the root of the disc, create a subfolder within your specified extras folder:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For example, if c:\media\extras\ is your extras folder, all files within the folder will be written to the root of the disc. • For example, if c:\media\extras\ is your extras folder, you could place the files you want to burn in a c:\media\extras\DVD-ROM subfolder so that the DVD-ROM folder and its contents would be written to the root of the disc. <p>Note: You can add any type of files or subfolder to the Extras folder, but this content will only be available when browsing the disc on a computer.</p> <p>Click the Change Media button  to browse to a folder.</p> <p>Click the Clear Media button  to remove a folder.</p> <p> Not available for Blu-ray Disc projects.</p>
Jacket picture	<p>The jacket picture feature allows you to specify a still image that will display when the Stop button has been pressed on the remote control.</p> <p>Commercially produced discs often use an image of the disc cover (hence the name), but you can use any image.</p> <p>Click the Change Media button  to browse to a folder.</p> <p>Click the Clear Media button  to clear the current jacket picture.</p> <p>Note: Not all DVD players support the jacket picture feature.</p> <p> Not available for Blu-ray Disc projects.</p>

Item	Description
DVD start script	<p>If you want to specify the start script that will be executed when your project is played in a DVD player, click the box and choose an available script from the drop-down list. If you have not yet created any scripts, the only available option will be None. For more information, see DVD Scripts (Ctrl+Alt+3) on page 23.</p> <p>Note: The start script will execute prior to any item designated as the start item in your project.</p> <p> Not available for Blu-ray Disc projects.</p>
Parental control	<p>You can restrict the disc's playback by selecting the parental controls (ratings) set by the Motion Picture Association of America (MPAA).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off: There are no parental controls. • 1 (G) — General audiences. All ages may watch the content. • 2 • 3 (PG) — Parental guidance suggested. Some content may not be suitable for children. • 4 (PG-13) — Parents strongly cautioned. Some content may be inappropriate for children under age 13. • 5 • 6 (R) — Restricted. No children under age 17 should watch this content without a parent or adult guardian present. • 7 (NC-17) — No one aged 17 and under should watch the content. • 8 <p> Not available for Blu-ray Disc projects.</p>
Application ID	Identifies the application. DVD Architect Pro is the default entry.
Volume name	<p>Enter the disc volume name.</p> <p>Note: The volume name is limited to 32 characters and can only contain capital letters (A-Z), digits (0-9), and underscore (_). DVD Architect Pro will automatically correct text that does not comply with these rules.</p>
Volume set name	<p>Enter the name of a set of volumes.</p> <p>Note: The volume set name is limited to 59 characters.</p>

Copy protection

You can use the controls on the Copy Protection tab to secure DVD content.

Note: *DVD Architect Pro software only sets the CSS and Macrovision flags; the encryption must be added by the mastering or replication facility.*



Copy-protection settings are not used for Blu-ray Disc projects.


Item	Description
Disc copyrighted	<p>Indicates whether the project contains copyrighted material:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Choose Yes if your project contains copyrighted material. You can then set the number of allowed copy generations and whether you want to use CSS and Macrovision.• Choose No if your project does not contain copyrighted material. When No is selected, you cannot set the number of allowed copy generations or use CSS or Macrovision.
Copy generations (CGMS)	<p>If you indicated that your project contains copyrighted material, then you can use the Copy generations drop-down list to set a flag that indicates whether you want to allow your project to be copied by DVD recorders and some personal video recorders (PVRs).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Unlimited: There is no limit on the number of copies that can be made; the disc can be copied, and those copies can be copied.• One: Single-generation copies can be made; the disc can be copied, but those copies cannot be copied.• None: No copies can be made. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>You can optionally use CSS and Macrovision protection.</i>• <i>The CGMS (content generation management system) protection flag may not be recognized by all PVRs or personal computers.</i>
CSS	<p>Allows you to set the CSS (Content Scramble System) flag on your disc.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• On: Sets a flag that tells the disc replication facility to apply CSS digital encryption to the disc to prevent duplication.• Off: Sets a flag that indicates that CSS digital encryption should not be applied during replication.
Macrovision	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Off: Sets a flag that tells the disc replication facility that Macrovision copy protection should not be encoded.• Type I: Sets a flag that tells the replication facility to add Automatic Gain Control (AGC). AGC adds pulses during the vertical blanking intervals that distort the picture when a user attempts to make an analog copy.• Type II: Sets a flag that tells the replication facility to add AGC and a two-line Colorstripe.• Type III: Sets a flag that tells the replication facility to add AGC and a four-line Colorstripe.

Regions

You can use the settings on the Regions tab to determine the regions in which a DVD can be played.

Region coding is how Hollywood studios stagger movie releases across the planet. These codes ensure that a disc isn't released before the movie is out in that country's theatres.


Note: Region information is not encoded on discs you burn with DVD Architect Pro software; the software sets a region flag that is encoded by a replication facility.

 Region settings are not used for Blu-ray Disc projects.

Item	Description
All regions	Choose Yes from the drop-down list if you want to be able to play your disc in any player regardless of geographical location. Choose No if you want to be able to allow or prevent playback for specific regions.
Region 1	Allows or prevents playback of your disc in North America.
Region 2	Allows or prevents playback of your disc in Japan, Europe, Middle East, Egypt, South Africa, and Greenland.
Region 3	Allows or prevents playback of your disc in Southeast Asia (including Hong Kong).
Region 4	Allows or prevents playback of your disc in Australia, New Zealand, Central/South America, Pacific Islands, and Caribbean.
Region 5	Allows or prevents playback of your disc in Northwest Asia (including Korea), and North Africa.
Region 6	Allows or prevents playback of your disc in China.
Region 7	Reserved
Region 8	Allows or prevents playback of your disc in Airplanes (In-Flight Entertainment).

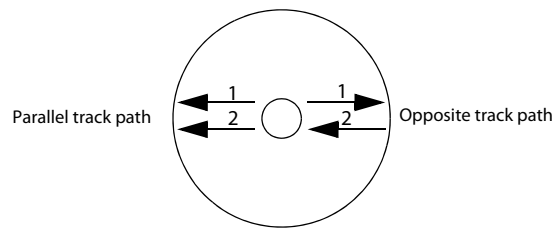
Mastering

You can use the settings on the Mastering tab to adjust settings for creating a disc master for replication. *For more information, see [Writing a master for replication on page 155](#).*

 Mastering is not available for Blu-ray Disc projects.

Item	Description
Output format	Allows you to specify the file format used when writing mastering files: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• DDP 2.00 — DDP (Disc Description Protocol) 2.00 is widely supported by replication facilities. This format supports CSS copy protection and region coding.• DDP 2.10 — Similar to DDP 2.00, but slightly more advanced. This format supports CSS copy protection and region coding.• CMF 1.0 — CMF (Cutting Master Format) supports CSS and region coding.
DVD-ROM type	Choose the type of DVD-ROM you are mastering: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• DVD-1 (1.4 G) — 8-cm, single-sided, single-layer DVD with a capacity of approximately 1.4 GB.• DVD-2 (2.7 G) — 8-cm, single-sided, single-layer DVD with a capacity of approximately 2.7 GB.• DVD-3 (2.9 G) — 8-cm, double-sided, single-layer DVD with a capacity of approximately 2.9 GB.• DVD-4 (5.3 G) — 8-cm, double-sided, double-layer DVD with a capacity of approximately 5.3 GB.• DVD-5 (4.7 G) — 12-cm, single-sided, single-layer DVD with a capacity of approximately 4.7 GB.• DVD-9 (8.5 G) — 12-cm, single-sided, double-layer DVD with a capacity of approximately 8.5 GB.• DVD-10 (9.4 G) — 12-cm, double-sided, single-layer DVD with a capacity of approximately 9.4 GB.• DVD-18 (17 G) — 12-cm, double-sided, double-layer DVD with a capacity of approximately 17 GB.
Number of sides	Allows you to specify the number of sides (one-sided or two-sided) that the mastered DVD will contain.
Current side	Allows you to specify for which side you're currently creating master files. Note: Available only when Number of sides is 2.
Number of layers	Allows you to specify the number of layers that the mastered DVD will contain. Choose 1 if your project will be burned to a single-layer DVD, or choose 2 if your project will be burned to a dual-layer DVD.

Item	Description
Direction of translation	Allows you to specify the direction in which reading will occur on the second layer of a dual-layer disc: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Parallel track path — Read from the inner radius of the disc to the outer radius. When the laser reaches the end of the first layer, it must move back to the inner radius and then refocus on the second layer. • Opposite track path — Read from the inner radius of the disc to the outer radius on the first layer and from the outer radius to the inner radius of the second layer.



Notes:

- *This setting is available only when the specified number of layers is 2.*
- *The first layer is always read from the inner radius of the disc to the outer radius.*

Disc diameter	Allows you to choose the physical diameter of the mastered DVD.
Advanced: DVD-ROM capacity (sectors)	This field allows you to adjust the number of sectors on the DVD-ROM to match manufacturing requirements. Click in the field and move the slider left or right to decrease or increase the sector capacity.
Customer information	Allows you to include or omit optional customer information, which can be included with mastering output. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Content owner — The owner or copyright holder of the media contained on the disc. • Content category — Type up to eight letters to identify the contents of the disc. • Disc ID — Type a unique identifier for the disc. This ID is for use by the content owner and can use any format. • Title name — The title of the disc. • Customer — Information about the customer for whom the disc is being produced. • Authoring studio — Information about the studio that created the contents of the disc. • Disc set number — If the disc is from a multidisc collection, use this setting to identify the disc. For example, if this disc is part two of a three-part series, type 2 in this box. • Maximum set number — If the disc is from a multidisc collection, use this setting to identify the number of discs in the series. For example, if this disc was part of a three-part series, type 3 in this box. • Memo — Type any additional comments in this section. <p>Note the following output format information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The DDP 2.00 output format does not support customer information. • Customer information is optional when using the DDP 2.10 output format. • The CMF 1.0 output format requires customer information. You can, however, save blank customer information fields with the master

Summary tab information

You can use the boxes on the Summary tab to enter information about the project if desired. This information is stored with the DVD Architect Pro project.

Item	Description
Title	Enter the title of the project.
Artist	Enter the name of the artist who performed in the project.
Engineer	Enter the name of the person who mixed or edited the project.
Copyright	Enter copyright information about the project.
Comments	Enter any comments you want to associate with the project.
Start all new projects with these settings	Select this check box to use the current dialog settings as the default.

Optimizing your project

To display the Optimize Disc dialog, choose **Optimize Disc** from the **File** menu. You can use this dialog to optimize your project before burning or mastering to identify and correct potential problems or to force recompression to specific formats.

Using the Optimize Disc dialog, you can perform the following actions:

- View the estimated project and individual media file sizes.
- View and change project and file format settings.
- Verify which media files will require recompression during the preparation process:
 - ✓ indicates a file is compliant (requires no recompression).
 - ⚠ indicates a file requires recompression (yellow).
 - 🟢 indicates some files are compliant and some files require recompression (green).
 - 🔴 indicates you have specified to force recompression (red) (see below for information).

Note: If a media file's format does not match the project format, the media file will be re-encoded during the preparation process. For example, if your media file is 4:3 MPEG-2 and your DVD Architect Pro project is 16:9, the file will be re-encoded.

To determine the best file format settings for your use, see [Rendering files for your project](#) on page 25.

Determining whether menus and titles are compliant

Use the following guidelines to determine whether your menus and titles will require recompression during the preparation process.

Menus

Menus always use the settings displayed above the **Project Properties** button. All menus use the same audio format, aspect ratio (16:9 or 4:3), and frame size, but you can mix frame rates for menus within a single project.

A menu's video will not be recompressed if it meets the following requirements:

- Any background video must match the project video format.
- No graphics can be added to the menu.
- Buttons must use highlighting only. Using button thumbnails or text will require recompression.

A menu's audio will not be recompressed if its background audio matches the project audio format.

If a menu requires recompression, it will be recompressed using the **Video format**, **Audio format** and the **Frame rate** setting from the Recompress settings section of the Optimize Disc dialog.

Media files

Media files will not be recompressed if rendered in a compliant format. For more information, see [Rendering files for your project](#) on page 25.

If a media file requires recompression, it will be recompressed using the **Project video format** and **Project audio format** settings. You can select a media file in the Optimize Disc dialog and use the controls in the Recompress settings section to override the default project formats.

Music/video compilations

A music/video compilation's video will not be recompressed if it meets the following requirements:

- Any background video or images must match the project video format.
- No graphics can be added to the compilation.

The audio will not be compressed if it matches the project audio format.

If a music/video compilation requires recompression, it will be recompressed using the project video and audio format settings. You can select a music/video compilation in the Optimize Disc dialog and use the controls in the Recompress settings section to override the default project formats.

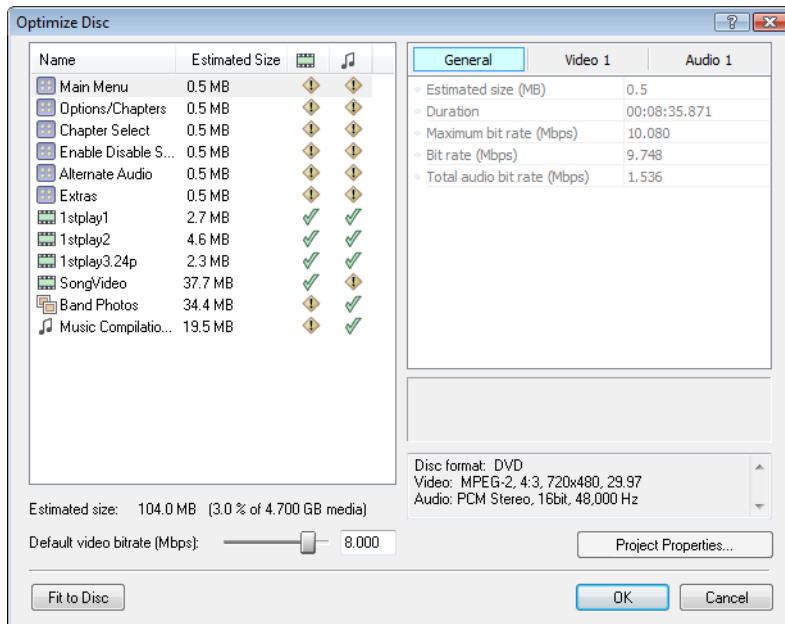
Picture compilations

The video portion of a picture compilation is always recompressed using the project video format, but you can select a music/video compilation in the Optimize Disc dialog and use the controls in the Recompress settings section to override the default video format.

The audio will not be recompressed if it is rendered in any compliant audio format. If the audio requires recompression, it will be recompressed using the project audio format. You can select a picture compilation in the Optimize Disc dialog and use the controls in the Recompress settings section to override the default audio format.

Using the Optimize Disc dialog to fine-tune your project

To display the Optimize Disc dialog, choose **Optimize Disc** from the **File** menu. Each menu and title in your project is displayed on the left side of the dialog with the estimated size of each item and an indication of whether the item will be recompressed.




Adjusting video recompression settings

1. Select a menu or video title from the list.
2. Click the **Video 1** button to display the controls. Information about the video format of the selected item is displayed. If your title has multiple video tracks, a separate **Video** button is displayed for each track.

Note: If the video is already compliant, you need to select the **Recompress** control, click the button, and choose **Yes** from the menu to edit its recompression settings.


3. Click the next to the **Recompress Settings** heading to expand the controls if they are not already expanded.
4. Select the **Use default bit rate** box and click the button to display a menu.

Option	Description
Yes	Choose if you want the selected video to use the bit rate from the Default video bit rate slider at the bottom of the Optimize Disc dialog.
No	Choose if you want to specify a custom bit rate for the selected video. You can then select the Bit rate (Mbps) control to specify the bit rate you want to use. Type a number in the box, use the spin control, or click the <input type="button" value="v"/> to display a slider you can use to adjust the bit rate.



5. Select the **Aspect ratio** control, click the  button, and choose a command from the menu if you want to choose a new video format for the recompressed video.

Note: This control is not available when a menu is selected. All menus in a project must have the same aspect ratio and resolution. Use the *Project Properties* dialog to control the aspect ratio and resolution of your project's menus. For more information, see [Disc properties](#) on page 32.

If	Then
You choose From project	The setting from Project Properties dialog is used. The settings are displayed above the Project Properties button.
You choose a widescreen video format	Your video will be displayed in 16:9 on a widescreen television and will be letterboxed on a normal television.

6. Select the **Resolution** control, and click the  button, choose a setting from the menu to change the frame size of the recompressed video.

Note: This control is not available when a menu is selected. All menus in a project must have the same aspect ratio and resolution. Use the *Project Properties* dialog to control the aspect ratio and resolution of your project's menus. For more information, see [Disc properties](#) on page 32.

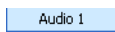
7. Select the **Frame rate** control, click the  button, and choose a command from the menu if you want to change the frame rate of the recompressed video.
8. Select the **Progressive** control, click the  button, and choose a setting from the menu to indicate whether you want to render the title or menu as progressive-scan video (applicable to DVD projects only).
 - Choose **Yes** to recompress a menu or title as progressive-scan video.
 - Choose **No** to recompress a menu or title as interlaced video.
 - Choose **Auto** to allow the software to determine the appropriate format: if the source media is progressive-scan video, the video or title will be recompressed as progressive; if the source media is interlaced, the video or title will be recompressed as interlaced

When you choose **Auto** for a music/video compilation, each compilation item is recompressed as a separate title and will match the format of the source media. If the audio is longer than the video, the compilation item will be recompressed as progressive-scan video to prevent artifacts when the last frame is held.


Notes:


- When using background video in DVD menus, we recommend rendering the video in progressive-scan format before adding it to your project. Leave the **Progressive** setting at **Auto**, and the noncompliant menu will be rendered as progressive-scan video. Progressive-scan menus will provide the sharpest-looking text and highest level of DVD player compatibility.
- If you need to use interlaced video as a menu background, choose **No** from the menu. When you choose **No**, the noncompliant menu will be rendered as interlaced video.
- When creating Blu-ray Disc projects, menus must match the field order set by your project's video format.

Adjusting audio recompression settings

1. Select a menu or audio file from the list.
2. Click the **Audio 1** button  to display the controls. Information about the audio format of the selected item is displayed. If your title has multiple audio tracks, a separate **Audio** button is displayed for each track.

Note: If the audio is already compliant, you need to select the **Recompress** control, click the button, and choose **Yes** from the menu to edit its recompression settings.

3. Click the  next to the **Recompress settings** heading to expand the controls if they are not already expanded.

4. Select the **Format** box and click the  button to display a menu. Choose a setting from the menu to determine the file type and settings (bit rate or bit depth and sample rate) that will be used to recompress the selected file. *For more information about audio settings, see [Audio defaults](#) on page 33.*

Adjusting project-wide settings

The area at the bottom of the Optimize Disc dialog shows information about your project. The **Project video format** and **Project audio format** settings from the Project Properties dialog are displayed, and your project size is estimated based on these formats and the **Default video bit rate** setting.

1. Drag the **Default video bit rate** slider or type a value in the edit box to adjust the size of your project:
 - 9.8 Mbps is the maximum bit rate for DVD players.
 - 28 Mbps is the maximum bit rate for Blu-ray Disc projects burned to DVD media.
 - 48 Mbps is the maximum bit rate for Blu-ray Disc projects burned to Blu-ray Disc media.
 - Increasing the bit rate can improve quality, but you can fit less media on the disc.
 - Decreasing the bit rate can allow you to fit more video on the disc, but quality will be decreased.
2. To change the video or audio format of your project, click the **Project Properties** button. *For more information, see [Disc properties](#) on page 32.*
3. If you want to automatically adjust the project video bit rate, click the **Fit to Disc** button to fit a project that is greater than the **Target media size** setting on the Disc Properties tab. *For more information, see [Disc properties](#) on page 32.*

Note: Only video that requires recompression will be adjusted. When your project cannot be made to fit on a disc, you can change the video settings so all titles and menus will be recompressed, or you can remove video from your project.

Editing a media file's source project

When your DVD Architect Pro project uses source media files that are rendered with an embedded project path reference, you can easily open the source project from the Explorer window in the associated application if you need to edit the media. By saving your project path reference when you render files in ACID 5.0, ACID Music Studio 6.0, Sound Forge 8.0, Vegas 6.0, or Vegas Movie Studio 6.0 or later, you can quickly access the media from DVD Architect Pro via the **Edit Source Project** shortcut menu.

Note: The project information in the rendered file is only a reference to a project file. If you modify the source project file after rendering, the project data will no longer match the rendered file. To edit a project using a path reference, the project file and all media must be available on your computer.

1. Right-click a media file in the Explorer window.
2. From the shortcut menu, choose **Edit Source Project**. An ACID, Vegas, or Sound Forge window will open with the source project.

If you are editing a source project using a computer other than the computer where the project was created, then the editing computer must meet the following requirements:

 - The software that was used to create the project must be installed and the project file extension (.acd, .acd-zip, .veg, .vf, or .frg) must be registered on the editing computer.
 - The editing computer must have the same version (or later) of the software as the computer where the project was created.
 - The project file must exist on the editing computer using the same file path as on the computer where the project was created.
 - The project's source media must exist on the editing computer. If the media files do not use the same file path as on the computer where the project was created, you will be prompted to choose a new folder or replacement files.
3. Edit the project as necessary.
4. Render the edited project using the same name as the original media file and close the editing application.

Note: If you are editing an existing title, your project will automatically be updated with the latest rendered media file.

Saving your project

When you save your work, it is saved in a project file (*.dar). Project files are not rendered media files.

1. From the **File** menu, choose **Save**.

Note: *The first time you save a project, the Save As dialog appears. In subsequent saves, the dialog is bypassed, your existing file name is retained, and your project is updated to include any implemented changes.*

2. Select the drive and folder where you want to store the project.
3. Type the project name in the **File Name** box.
4. Click the **Save** button.

Saving a copy of your project (Save As)

After you have been working with your project, you can use the **Save As** command on the **File** menu to create a copy of the project file with a different name. Saving a number of different versions of a project is a low-risk way to try new techniques.

1. From the **File** menu, choose **Save As**. The Save As dialog is displayed.
2. Select the drive and folder where you want to store the project.
3. Type a new name in the **File name** box.
4. Choose a setting from the **Copy media** drop-down list if you want to copy your project's assets to the same folder as your project file:
 - **Normal** saves a standard DVD Architect Pro project without copying media.
 - **Copy user media with project** creates copies of your media files in the project folder.
 - **Copy user and theme media with project** creates copies of your media files and any required theme files in the project folder.
5. Click the **Save** button.

Chapter 4: Creating a Menu-Based Project

When you start a menu-based project with DVD Architect™ Pro, a main menu is created by default. You can add more menus to allow the user to play movies and navigate to other menus by selecting buttons.

Think of menus as an outline of your project: each menu can contain background media, graphics, text, and links to music/video compilations, picture compilations, or movies.

You can apply a theme to your menus to achieve a consistent appearance and layout, or you can customize the appearance of each menu and its objects individually. For more information, see [Working with themes](#) on page 132.

Pages extend menus across multiple screens; add a page when you want to add more items to a menu than will fit on a single page.

Notes:

- When using background video in DVD menus, we recommend rendering the video in progressive-scan format before adding it to your project. Leave the **Progressive** setting at **Auto**, and the noncompliant menu will be rendered as progressive-scan video. Progressive-scan menus will provide the sharpest-looking text and highest level of DVD player compatibility.

If you need to use interlaced video as a menu background, choose **No** from the menu. When you choose **No**, the noncompliant menu will be rendered as interlaced video.

Some DVD players will not display the last frame of a menu correctly when using interlaced background video.

- When creating Blu-ray Disc™ projects, menus must match the field order set by your project's video format.

Building menus



When a user places the disc in a DVD or Blu-ray Disc player, a main menu is displayed. The main menu contains links to submenus or titles (music/video compilations, picture compilations, or media files) when the user selects them. When you start the software and create a menu-based project, a default main menu page is displayed for you. You can begin assembling your main menu using the existing appearance and layout, or you can edit the appearance of the main menu using themes or by adding your own background image/video, text, and audio. You can begin adding submenus and media whenever you're ready!

Adding a submenu

You can add submenus to a project to organize your content.

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu you want to edit.
2. From the **Insert** menu, choose **Submenu**. A new menu is created below the current menu, and a button is added to the current menu as a link to the submenu.



Alternatively, click the **Insert Object**  button and choose **Menu**  in the Project Overview window.

Note: You can edit the button by selecting it and making changes to the controls in the Button Properties pane in the Properties window. For more information, see [Button properties](#) on page 73.

3. Double-click the submenu in the Project Overview window (or double-click the submenu's button in the workspace) to edit the layout and add titles (such as movies, music, or compilations) or playlists.

Adding a submenu from a file

You can add submenus from a file to create a new menu using a .psd file that contains menu background, buttons, and related mask images in a single layered file. *For more information, see [Creating custom menus and buttons using layered graphics](#) on page 128.*

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu you want to edit.
2. From the **Insert** menu, choose **Submenu from File** and browse to the file. A new menu is created below the current menu, and a button is added to the current menu as a link to the submenu.
3. Double-click the submenu in the Project Overview window (or double-click the submenu's button in the workspace) to open the new menu in the workspace.
4. Add links for each button.
 - a. Select a button in the workspace.
 - b. On the Button Properties pane, click the **Action** button.
 - c. Click **Command**, click the button, and choose **Link**.
 - d. Click **Destination**, click the button, and choose the button's destination from the menu.

Tip: *If you're linking to a title, the title must be in your project before you can choose it as a destination. Drag the media file from the Explorer window to the Project Overview window to add it to your project.*

5. Edit the menu as needed.

Reapplying a file's layout to menu objects

You can automatically update menu objects at any time after importing a menu from a layered image file. The update will restore the initial look of the menu, which includes button sizes and locations. Any buttons that you added after importing the layered file will be removed and any buttons that you deleted after importing the layered file will be restored.

Note: *Nonvisual changes, such as button links, are preserved.*

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu you want to reapply the layout.
2. From the **Edit** menu, choose **Reapply Layout From File** to update the objects.

Inserting pages

Adding pages

You can add pages to a menu if you have more content than will fit on one page. For example, your main menu could be two pages long if necessary.

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu you want to edit.
2. From the **Insert** menu, choose **Page**. An arrow button is added to the current menu as a link to the page.

Note: *You can edit the button by selecting it and making changes to the controls in the Button Properties pane in the Properties window. For more information, see [Button properties](#) on page 73.*

3. Double-click the page in the Project Overview window (or double-click the arrow button in the workspace) to edit the layout and add media.

Deleting pages

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu you want to edit.
2. From the **Edit** menu, choose **Delete Page**.


Changing page order

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu you want to edit.
2. From the **Edit** menu, choose **Page Order**, and then choose **Move Forward** or **Move Back** to move the current menu forward or backward.

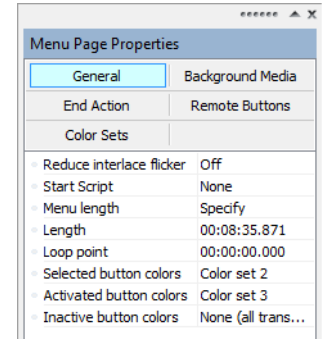
Editing menu page properties

The Menu Page Properties pane in the Properties window allows you to adjust the length, background media, end actions, and remote control button behavior for the selected page.

To edit the menu's properties, perform the following steps:

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu you want to edit.
2. Click the property button that you would like to edit.
3. Click the specific property, click the  button, and choose a setting from the menu.

The following sections describe the controls under each heading in the Menu Page Properties pane.




General

Reduce interlace flicker

Choose a setting from the drop-down list to turn flicker reduction on or off. Turn flicker reduction on when using still images that contain horizontal lines.

Start script

If you have already created at least one DVD script in your project, select the **Start Script** box, click the  button, and choose the script that will be played when the music/video compilation is accessed.

Note: *None is the default setting.*




Scripting is not available for Blu-ray Disc™ projects.

Menu length

A menu's length determines how much time is available for animated menu objects. For example, if your menu length is 30 seconds, an animated button could display up to 30 seconds of video.

Choose a setting from the **Menu length** drop-down list:

- When **Auto calculate** is selected, the software will determine the menu length based on the background audio, video, and button animations.
- When **Specify** is selected, you can type a number in the **Length** box or click the  button to display a slider you can use to match the length of the background video if one exists.

Note: *If you type a value in the **Length** box that is longer than the background video, the background video will end, and any animated thumbnails will continue to play until the end of the menu. If you want the menu to loop smoothly when your menu duration is longer than the video, create a new background video that matches the desired menu length.*

Loop point

Choose a setting from the drop-down list or drag the slider to set the point at which buttons will be displayed and when looped playback will begin. You may also apply keyframe animation to buttons before the loop point. The loop point is shown with a green marker in the Timeline window. *For more information, see [Crop and video effects keyframes](#) on page 64.*

Note: *If the menu's end action is not set to **Loop**, the menu loop point will set the point at which buttons are displayed, but the menu will not loop.*

Selected button colors

Choose a color set that will be used to display the selected button on a page. Choose **None** if you do not want to use color sets to display button highlighting.

Activated button colors

Choose a color set that will be used to display the selected button when you press **Enter** on the DVD or Blu-ray Disc remote control to activate it. Choose **None** if you do not want to use color sets to display button highlighting.

Inactive button colors

Choose a color set that will be used to display unselected buttons on the menu. Choose **None** if you do not want to use color sets to display button highlighting.



The **Inactive button colors** control must be set to **None** for Blu-ray Disc projects.

Background Media

Notes:

- *When using background video in DVD menus, we recommend rendering the video in progressive-scan format before adding it to your project. Leave the **Progressive** setting at **Auto**, and the noncompliant menu will be rendered as progressive-scan video. Progressive-scan menus will provide the sharpest-looking text and highest level of DVD player compatibility.*


*If you need to use interlaced video as a menu background, choose **No** from the menu. When you choose **No**, the noncompliant menu will be rendered as interlaced video.*


Some DVD players will not display the last frame of a menu correctly when using interlaced background video.

- *When creating Blu-ray Disc projects, menus must match the field order set by your project's video format.*

Video

The **Video** control displays the path to the background video file that will be used in the menu.

Select the control and click the  button to display a menu, where you can choose a file, view media properties, crop and adjust media settings, remove the current file, open the file in your selected graphics editor, or explore the file's containing folder on your drive.

If you're using a .psd file as a menu background, click the  button to the left of the **Video** heading and choose a setting from the **Layer** menu to choose the layer you want to use.

Audio

The **Audio** control displays the path to the background audio file that will be used in the menu.

Select a command from the menu, where you can choose a file, view media properties, remove the current file, or generate music if Cinescore™ is installed on your computer. *For more information, see [Generating music with Cinescore](#) on page 123.*

Highlight mask

You can apply a mask to your menu to prevent button highlighting from obscuring parts of the menu. Select a command from the menu, where you can choose a file, view media properties, crop and adjust media settings, or remove the current file.

For additional mask controls, click the + button to the left of the **Mask** heading.

Item	Description
Layer	If the current mask file uses layers, then this control allows you to choose a single layer or the combined layers as a highlight mask.

Note: *If you want to use the combined layers as a mask, choose **Composited layer**.*

The menu highlight mask and button highlight mask are combined, and the **Selected button colors**, **Activated button colors**, or **Inactive button colors** color set is applied to the masked area for each button depending on its current state. *For more information, see [Creating custom masks on page 125](#).*

Highlight mask mapping

To specify how transparency is determined from the mask, choose a command from the drop-down list.

Item	Description
Transparency	Maps the alpha channel in the menu highlight mask to the four colors used in the color set selected in the Selected button colors , Activated button colors , or Inactive button colors drop-down list. The most opaque pixels (those with alpha values of 192 to 255) are mapped to the color set's fill color (color 1), and the most transparent pixels (those with alpha values of 0 to 63) are mapped to the color set's transparent color (color 4).
Intensity	Maps the average pixel intensity of the menu highlight mask to the four colors used in the color set selected in the Selected button colors or Activated button colors drop-down list. The lightest pixels (those with an average intensity of 192 to 255) are mapped to the color set's fill color (color 1), and the darkest pixels (those with an average intensity of 0 to 63) are mapped to the color set's transparent color (color 4).
Color channel	Maps the color channels in the menu highlight mask to the four colors used in the color set selected in the Selected button colors or Activated button colors drop-down list. A pixel containing any red channel component uses the color set's fill color (color 1), a pixel containing any green channel component uses the color set's anti-alias color (color 2), a pixel containing any blue component uses the color set's outline/background color (color 3), and a completely black pixel uses the color set's transparent color (color 4). For more information, see Using color sets on page 60 .

Stretch type

Choose an option from the drop-down list to determine how the image will be scaled.

Item	Description
Letterbox	The image is displayed without scaling, and black letterboxing bars are displayed above and below or to the right and left sides as needed.
Zoom to fit	The image is magnified to fill the screen.
Stretch to fit	The image is stretched to fill the screen. This may cause distortion in the image.

End Actions

Command

A menu's end action determines what happens at the end of the menu if a user doesn't select a button.

Choose a command from the drop-down list to determine what happens at the end of the menu.

Item	Description
Loop	The menu will play continuously, repeating playback from the loop point until the user activates another button. Menu buttons are not displayed until playback reaches the loop point. If you want the menu to loop smoothly, ensure the background video length matches the menu length.
Hold	The menu will play once and then display a static menu until the user activates another button.
Activate Button	A button will be activated after a specified duration if the user doesn't activate another button. You can use this setting to automatically stop or resume playback or display another page if the user doesn't choose another action within a set time.

Timeout

When **Activate button** is selected in the **Command** drop-down list, use the **Timeout** control to set the amount of time you want to pass before performing the end action.

Note: *If the Timeout setting is longer than the menu length, the last frame is held until the timeout duration.*

Button

When **Activate button** is selected in the **Command** drop-down list, use the **Button** control to indicate which button will be activated if the user hasn't activated another button before the **Timeout** duration has passed.

Remote Buttons

For each menu and title, you can allow or suspend operation of individual buttons on the DVD or Blu-ray Disc remote control. Turning buttons on or off helps to ensure the viewer will see your project as you intended it.

If you have an animated menu, for example, turning off buttons will prevent the user from navigating away from the menu before it's finished playing.

To turn each button on or off, choose **On** or **Off** from the drop-down list.

Note: *When Off is selected from the menu, the button is not available.*

Item	Description
Title play	Allows the user to press the Title button on the remote to skip to a specific video or music/picture compilation.
Stop	Allows the user to press the Stop button on the remote to stop the disc.
Time/chapter search	Allows the user to press the Time button on the remote to skip to a specific play time or chapter.
Previous/up	Allows the user to press the Previous/Up button on the remote to navigate to the previous chapter or menu page.
Next	Allows the user to press the Next button on the remote to navigate to the next chapter or menu page.
Fast scan	Allows the user to press the Fwd button on the remote to seek forward through a video, music/video compilation, or picture compilation.
Backward scan	Allows the user to press the Rev button on the remote to seek backward through a video, music/video compilation, or picture compilation.
Top menu	Allows the user to press the Menu button on the remote to navigate to the top menu of the disc.
Menu	This control is not available for menu pages.
Resume	Allows the user to press the Resume (Menu) button on the remote to resume playback of a title after exiting it by pressing the Menu button.
Button navigation	Allows the user to press the Up/Down/Left/Right buttons on the remote to navigate between menu buttons.
Pause	Allows the user to press the Pause button on the remote to temporarily suspend playback.

Item	Description
Audio track change	Allows the user to press the Audio button on the remote to choose which audio track is played. Note: Choose No Change to use the last-set track.
Subtitle track change	Allows the user to press the Subtitle button on the remote to choose which subtitle track is displayed. Note: Choose No Change to use the last-set track.
Video angle change	Allows the user to press the Angle button on the remote to choose which video track is played.
Video mode	Allows the user to press the Video Mode button on the remote to switch widescreen, letterboxed, and pan-and-scan presentation in a 16:9 video.

Fixing button navigation

If your DVD or Blu-ray Disc remote Next button goes to the next title instead of the next chapter or if the Previous button doesn't navigate to the previous title in a playlist, then you will need to turn off **Title play**.

1. In the Project Overview window, double-click the title that you want to edit.
2. In the Properties window, click the **Remote Buttons** button.
3. Select **Title play** and choose **Off** from the drop-down menu.

Tip: You can use the *Order Titles* dialog to make the title order match the playlist order. For more information, see [Editing title order on page 52](#).

Color Sets

Choosing color sets for a menu's buttons

You can choose color sets to choose which colors are used to indicate selected, activated, and inactive buttons. You can have four project-wide color sets that are available to every menu page in your project, and each menu page in your project can also have up to four custom color sets with four colors each. Each color set includes a fill color, outline/background color, anti-alias color, and transparent color.

Use the Color Sets page to edit the color sets that will be available for the selected menu, and then use the General page to choose which color sets are used for the selected, activated, and inactive buttons on your menu. *For more information, see [Using color sets on page 60](#).*

Adding titles

The buttons and graphics displayed on a menu are called *objects*. Some of these objects, such as graphics and static text, are used for design purposes, and others, such as buttons, are used for navigation purposes.

- In a DVD project, each full-screen menu can hold up to 36 buttons; widescreen menus can hold up to 18 buttons.
- In a Blu-ray Disc project, each menu can hold up to 250 buttons.

Media such as videos, music/video compilations, and picture compilations are called *titles*. When you add a title to your project, an object is automatically created on your menu.

Use the Button Properties controls to edit button settings. *For more information, see [Button properties](#) on page 73.*

Inserting a picture compilation

To add a picture compilation to your menu or page, choose **Picture Compilation** from the **Insert** menu. *For more information on picture compilations, see [Creating a Picture Compilation](#) on page 89.*



Click the **Insert Object**  button and choose **Picture Compilation**  in the Project Overview window.

Inserting a music/video compilation

To add a music/video compilation to your menu or page, choose **Music/Video Compilation** from the **Insert** menu. *For more information on music/video compilations, see [Creating a Music/Video Compilation](#) on page 81.*





Click the **Insert Object**  button and choose **Music/Video Compilation**  in the Project Overview window.

Tip: Buttons can be added to picture, music, or video compilations. *For more information, see [Adding buttons to videos](#) on page 109.*

Inserting a single-movie title

To add a single-movie title to your menu or page, choose **Media** from the **Insert** menu. *For more information on adding movies, see [Creating a Single-Movie Disc or Title](#) on page 103.*



Click the **Insert Object**  button and choose **Media**  in the Project Overview window.

Note: Once you have inserted a single-movie title and added chapter markers, you can automatically create a scene selection menu based on your markers. *For more information, see [Inserting a scene selection menu](#) on page 56.*

Editing title order

From the File menu, choose **Order Titles** to display the Order Titles dialog, where you can change the order in which titles are arranged on the disc.

Reordering titles can be useful when fine-tuning the layer break on dual-layer discs or to ensure that the titles in a playlist will play back sequentially when a user interrupts playback by pressing the Next button on the DVD or Blu-ray Disc remote control. *For more information, see [Adding a playlist to a menu](#) on page 99.*

1. From the File menu, choose **Order Titles**. The Order Titles dialog is displayed.
By default, the title order matches the order in which you added titles to the project.
2. Select a title and click the **Move Up** or **Move Down** buttons to change the selected title's order.
3. Repeat step 2 as needed.
4. Click **OK** to close the Order Titles dialog and save your changes.

Adding graphics

You can add an image or video to serve as a design element for a menu or page. If you add a video to a menu, it will automatically begin playback when the user accesses the menu.





Note: Graphics are for design purposes only and cannot be used for navigation.

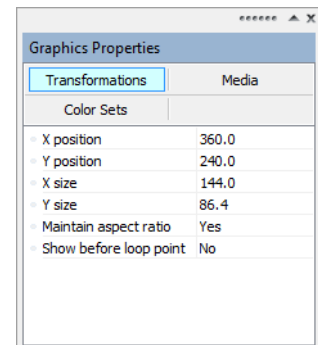
1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu you want to edit.
2. From the **Insert** menu, choose **Graphic**. The Insert Graphic dialog is displayed.
3. Locate and select the file you want to use.
4. Click the **OK** button. The image or video is added to your menu.

Editing graphics properties



The Graphics Properties pane in the Properties window allows you to adjust the position, size, and appearance of graphical elements on a menu or compilation.

To edit the graphic's properties, perform the following actions:

1. Select a graphic with the selection tool , sizing tool , or navigation tool .
2. Click the property button that you would like to edit.
3. Select the specific property, click the  button and choose a setting.




Transformations

Item	Description
X position	Allows you to edit the X and Y position values to change the center of the selected graphic's position.
Y position	Perform any of the following to change the setting: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Select the number and type a new value.• Use the spin controls to adjust the value.• Select the value and click the  button to display a slider that you can use to adjust the value.
Note: These coordinates are based on the frame size of your project. For example, if you're creating an NTSC project with a frame size of 720x480, (0,0) is the top-left corner of the frame, and (720,480) is the lower-right corner.	
X size	Allows you to edit the X and Y size values to change the size of the selected graphic.
Y size	Perform any of the following to change the setting: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Select the number and type a new value.• Use the spin controls to adjust the value.• Select the value and click the  button to display a slider that you can use to adjust the value.
Maintain aspect ratio	Allows you to choose if you want the image to be stretched when you change the height or width.
Show before loop point	Allows you to choose if you want the image to be displayed before the menu's loop point. For more information, see Setting loop points on page 56.

Media

Media settings determine the image displayed for a graphical element and adjusts its appearance. You can use still images or video files as graphics.

Object Media

Object Media displays the path to the current media file. Select the  button for options to replace a file, view media properties, crop and adjust media settings, remove the current file, open the file in a graphics editor, or explore the containing folder.

Tip: To change a file quickly, drag a file from the Explorer window to the **Object Media** box.

For more information, see [Cropping and adjusting video and graphics](#) on page 61. For more information, see [Editing media properties](#) on page 66.

Start time

Allows you to adjust which frame is displayed (for a still image) or the frame at which playback will begin (for an animated graphic) by dragging the slider or typing a value in the box.

Style

Allows you to choose if you want to display a still image or an animated graphic.

Highlight mapping

Select Highlight mapping to specify how a transparency is determined from the mask.

For more information, see [Highlight mask mapping](#) on page 49.

Color Sets

Color sets determine which colors are used to indicate selected, activated, and inactive buttons on your menu page. You can have four project-wide color sets that are available to every menu page in your project, and each menu page in your project can also have up to four custom color sets with four colors each. Each color set includes a fill color, outline/background color, anti-alias color, and transparent color.

Use the Color Sets page to edit the color sets that will be available for the selected menu, and then use the General page in the Menu Page Properties pane to choose which color sets are used for the selected, activated, and inactive buttons on your menu. For more information, see [Using color sets](#) on page 60.

Inserting and editing text

Inserting text on a menu or page




1. From the **Insert** menu, choose **Text**. A text box is placed on the current menu or page.
2. Type your desired text.
3. Drag the text box to position it on the menu or page.

Setting a menu's title text object






A title object is used when you apply themes to a menu. The title object will also be used as the menu's title in the Project Overview window if the menu has not been renamed. After renaming a menu in the Project Overview window, changing the title object will set the object that will be used for themes, but it will not rename the menu.

Right-click a text object and choose **Title Object** from the shortcut menu to use the selected text as the menu's title object.

Formatting text

1. Select a text box with the selection tool , sizing tool , or navigation tool . The text bar below the menu displays the text settings.


Tip: From the **View** menu, choose **Text Bar** to display or hide the text bar.

2. Choose a font from the drop-down list to set the typeface for your text.
3. Choose a font size from the drop-down list. Choose **Auto** to have the text automatically adjust to fit the size of the text box.
4. Click the **Bold** , **Italic** , or **Shadow**  buttons to toggle your font effects as desired.
5. To apply a shadow, click the down arrow next to the **Shadow**  button. A pop-up window is displayed to allow you to set the position, color, and blurring of the shadow text.
6. Set your text justification options as desired. For more information, see [Text bar \(Alt+2\)](#) on page 16.
7. Click the down arrow next to the color swatch button  to display the color picker, where you can set the red, green, blue, and alpha channels for your text.

Editing text

1. Select a text box in the current menu.
2. From the **Edit** menu, choose **Edit Text** (or press F2). The text becomes editable.
3. Edit the text as necessary.
4. Press one of the following keys to commit your text changes:
 - F2
 - Ctrl+Enter
 - Tab

Moving text

1. Select a text box with the sizing tool .
2. Move the selected text using one of the following options:

Option	Description
I	Drag the text box.
II	1. Click the Transformations button in the Properties window. 2. Drag an object in the workspace or type values in the X position and Y position boxes to set the object's center point.


Note: The X and Y coordinates are based on the frame size of your project. For example, if you're creating an NTSC project with a frame size of 720x480, (0,0) is the top-left corner of the frame, and (720,480) is the lower-right corner.

Setting loop points


When a menu's action is set to loop, you can specify a loop point to indicate the point where looped playback will begin.


Notes: Menu buttons will not appear until playback reaches the loop point if *Show Before Loop Point* is set to **No** in the *Buttons Properties* window. For more information, see [Button properties](#) on page 73.


If *Show Before Loop Point* is set to **Yes** in the *Button Properties* window, buttons will appear before the loop point. Keyframe animation may be applied to the buttons. For more information, see [Crop and video effects keyframes](#) on page 64.

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu you want to edit.
2. Set the menu's end action.
 - a. On the Menu Page Properties window, click the **End Action** button.
 - b. Click **Command**, click the  button, and select **Loop**.

Note: If the menu's end action is not set to Loop, the menu loop point will set the point at which buttons are displayed, but the menu will not loop.

3. Set your menu's length.
 - a. On the Menu Page Properties pane, click the **General** button.
 - b. Click **Menu length**, click the  button, and select one of the following options:

Item	Description
Auto calculate	The software will determine the menu length based on the background audio, video, and button animations.
Specify	When selected, it allows you to type a number in the Length box or click the  button to display a slider to set the length of the background video if one exists. Tip: If you type a value in the Length box that is longer than the background video, the background video will end, and any animated thumbnails will continue to play until the end of the menu. If you want the menu to loop smoothly when your menu duration is longer than the video, create a new background video that matches the desired menu length.

4. Click **Loop point**, click the  button, and drag the slider or type a value in the box to set the point at which buttons will be displayed and when looped playback will begin. The loop point is shown with a green marker in the Timeline window.




Click the **Set Loop Point** button  in the Timeline window.

Inserting a scene selection menu

A scene selection menu lets a user choose a specific scene in a video.

You can quickly and easily create a scene selection menu from an existing video title.



Continuing playback after playing the selected scene (automatic scene selection menus)

1. Insert your video title and add your scene/chapter markers. These markers are used to create your scene selection menu. For more information about inserting video titles, see [Adding a movie title to a menu](#) on page 103. For more information about adding scene/chapter markers, see [Inserting scene/chapter markers](#) on page 104.
2. Return to the menu to which you added the video title and select its button in the workspace or select the title in the Project Overview window.
3. Right-click the video title and click the **Insert Scene Selection Menu** button  in the Project Overview window. The Insert Scene Selection Menu dialog is displayed.
4. In the **Page title** box, type a title to use for the scene selection menu.

5. In the **Links per page** box, type the number of links you want to display per page. If you have many scenes and you don't want them all to appear on one page, as many scene selection pages as necessary will be created to accommodate all of your scenes/chapters.
6. Click **OK**. Your scene selection menu and pages are automatically created using the current theme, and a button is added to the current menu.
7. To edit a scene selection menu, double-click the button. You can edit the layout or object properties on the menu.



Tip: If you want to create individual thumbnails that link to chapter points without creating a scene-selection menu, add an empty button to your menu and use its button action to link to a title and chapter.

Returning to the menu after playing the selected scene/chapter (manual scene selection menus)

1. Insert your video title and add your chapter markers or scene/chapter markers. These markers are used to create your scene selection menu. *For more information about inserting video titles, see [Adding a movie title to a menu on page 103](#). For more information about adding chapter markers, see [Inserting chapter markers on page 104](#).*
2. Return to the menu to which you added the video title and select its button in the workspace or select the title in the Project Overview window.
3. From the **Edit** menu, choose **Copy**. The button is copied to the clipboard.
4. From the **Edit** menu, choose **Paste**. A copy of the button is added to your menu.
5. Repeat step 4 for each chapter you want to be able to play from the menu.
6. Set the in and out points for each button.
 - a. Double-click the button in the workspace or double-click the title in the Project Overview window to open it.
 - b. In the Timeline window, position the cursor where you want the button to begin playback and click the **Set In Point** button .
 - c. Position the cursor where you want the button to stop playback and click the **Set Out Point** button .
7. Repeat step 6 for each button.

Creating a scene selection only disc

This procedure assumes your title includes scene/chapter markers. You can add scene/chapter markers in the Timeline window.

1. From the **File** menu, choose **New**.
2. Select the **Single Movie** icon , and then click **OK**. The Open Media dialog is displayed.
3. Select the video file you want to use, and then click **OK**.
4. In the Project Overview window, right-click the video and choose **Insert Scene Selection Menu** from the shortcut menu. The Insert Scene Selection Menu dialog is displayed.
5. In the **Page title** box, type the title you'd like to be displayed on the new menu.
6. In the **Links per page** box, specify the number of links you'd like to have displayed on each page. For example, if your video includes fifteen scene/chapter markers, typing **5** in this box will create a scene-selection menu with three pages.
7. Click the **OK** button to create the menu and pages. You can then edit the menu as necessary.
8. In the Project Overview window, select the menu page (i.e. Scene Selection (Page 1)) and click the **Set Disc Start** button .

Inserting a setup menu

You can use button actions to create a setup menu that allows the user to choose which audio and subtitle tracks will be used when your project is played. For more information, see [Button properties](#) on page 73.

Note: If a button action or end action changes the audio or subtitle track after it is selected on your setup menu, the new track will be used by default when you navigate between titles unless another button action, end action, or user action (via the DVD or Blu-ray Disc remote control) changes the track.

1. Add a menu to your project.
2. Add a button for each audio track in your project:
 - a. From the **Insert** menu, choose **Empty Button**.
 - b. Press F2 and edit the button's text to describe the audio track it will select.
 - c. In the Button Properties pane, click the **Action** button and use the **Destination chapter** drop-down list to determine what happens when the button is clicked:

If	Then
You want the button to select an audio track without navigating away from the setup menu	Choose your setup menu from the Destination drop-down list.
You want to navigate away from the setup menu after choosing an audio track	Choose a media file or menu from the Destination chapter drop-down list.

For example, choosing a media file would allow you to automatically start playback of a title using the selected audio. Choosing a menu could navigate to a scene selection menu or a separate setup menu for choosing the subtitle track.

- d. In the Button Properties controls, choose a track from the **Set audio track** drop-down list to determine which audio track will be played in a destination title.

Note: If you use the **Set audio track** control to change the audio track, the new track will be used when you navigate between titles unless another button action, end action, or user action (via the remote control) changes the track.

- e. Repeat steps a through d for each audio track in your project.
3. Add a button for each subtitle track in your project:
 - a. From the **Insert** menu, choose **Empty Button**.
 - b. Press F2 and edit the button's text to describe the subtitle track it will select.
 - c. In the Button Properties controls, use the **Destination chapter** drop-down list to determine what happens when the button is clicked:

If	Then
You want the button to select a subtitle track without navigating away from the setup menu	Choose your setup menu from the Destination chapter drop-down list.
You want to navigate away from the setup menu after choosing a subtitle track	Choose a media file or menu from the Destination chapter drop-down list.

For example, choosing a media file would allow you to automatically start playback of a title using the selected subtitles. Choosing a menu could navigate to a scene selection menu or a separate setup menu for choosing the audio track.

- d. In the Button Properties controls, choose a track from the **Set subtitle track** drop-down list to determine which subtitle track will be played in a destination title.

Note: If you use the **Set subtitle track** control to change the audio track, the new track will be used when you navigate between titles unless another button action, end action, or user action (via the remote control) changes the track.





- e. Repeat steps a through d for each subtitle track in your project.

4. If you want the current tracks to be used throughout the disc, change the button properties for all links to your media so **No change** is selected for the **Set audio track** and **Set subtitle track** controls.

Adding navigation buttons

Navigation buttons help users move through your menus and pages. As you create menus and pages, navigation buttons are automatically created for you. For example, if the main menu is selected when you add a submenu, a button link to the new menu is added to the main menu, and a button link to the main menu is added to the new menu.

If you delete the default navigation buttons, you can create new buttons by choosing a command from the **Insert** menu:

Button	Command	Description
	Back Button	Allows navigation to the main menu.
	Next Button	Allows navigation to the next page.
	Previous Button	Allows navigation to the previous page.
	Empty Button	Allows you to add an empty button as a placeholder. You can edit the button's properties later.

Note: *The Back Button, Next Button, and Previous Button commands are available only if the target menu or page exists.*

You can use the Button Properties controls in the Properties window to edit the button image used and its link properties. *For more information, see [Button properties](#) on page 73.*

Creating menu transitions

You can combine button actions and media end actions to play a media file as a transition between menus and between menus or titles.

1. Drag the transition media file from the Explorer (or Microsoft® Windows® Explorer) to the root folder in the Project Overview window. Dragging a file to the root folder adds the media to your project without creating a button on a menu.
2. Set the transition media's end action to link to the menu or title that you want to display after the transition.
3. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu you want to edit.
4. Select a button.
5. Set the button action to play the transition media.

When a user activates the button, the button plays the transition media, and the transition media's end action displays the target menu or title.

6. Repeat steps 1 through 5 for each button on the menu.

You can create multiple copies of your transition media at the root of the Project Overview window and specify a different menu as an end action for each instance. The transition media will only be saved to the disc once.


Note: *Multiple titles or media files that use the same video, audio, and subtitle streams will only be saved once on the disc. For more information, see [Optimizing your project](#) on page 39.*

Creating custom menus



For the ultimate control over the appearance of your menus, you can create custom menus using your favorite graphics application. *For more information, see [Creating custom menus and buttons using layered graphics](#) on page 128.*

Using color sets

Each menu page or title in your project can have up to four color sets with four colors each. Each color set includes a fill color, outline/background color, anti-alias color, and transparent color. By choosing different color sets, you can display button highlighting using one color set to indicate that the button is selected and a different color set to indicate that it has been activated, or you can assign distinct colors to subtitle events. *For more information, see [Style on page 75](#), [Creating a graphic subtitle on page 117](#), or [Editing a subtitle event's color set on page 121](#).*

If the window isn't already visible, choose **Properties** from the **View** menu and click the  button next to the **Color Sets** heading to expand the controls.


Editing a color set


1. On the Graphics Properties, Menu Page Properties, Button Properties, Subtitle Properties, Media and Event Properties, Music Compilation Properties, Picture Compilation Properties, or Playlist Properties pane, click the **Color Sets** button.
2. Click the  button next to the color set you want to edit.
3. Choose a setting from the **Color Set X** drop-down list to indicate whether you want the color set to be available to your entire project (**Project wide**) or only the currently selected menu or title (**Custom**).
4. Select the **Mode** box, click the  button, and choose a setting from the drop-down list to specify the colors in your color set:

Item	Description
Blend colors	You only need to choose the color set's fill color; the other colors will be determined automatically by the software.
Specify colors	You need to choose the fill color, anti-alias color, outline/background color, and transparent color.

5. Select the color you want to edit:

Item	Description
Fill color	Use to display subtitle text and highlighting on menu buttons.
Anti-alias color	Used to smooth the edges of menu button highlighting and subtitle text. The color should be a blend of the fill color and the outline/background color.
Outline/ Background color	Used to display the outline or background color for menu buttons or subtitle text.
Transparency color	Used to determine the transparent portions of subtitle text and menu button highlighting.

6. Click the drop-down arrow next to the selected color swatch to display a color picker, where you can edit the selected color. Click the  button to switch between RGB and HSL color modes.

Note: If you choose an out-of-gamut color while using the color picker, then a warning  is displayed. Click the color swatch below the warning to correct the color.


Applying color sets

You can apply color sets to buttons using the **Selected button colors**, **Active button colors**, and **Inactive button colors** drop-down lists in the Menu Page Properties pane. *For more information, see [Choosing color sets for a menu's buttons on page 51](#).*

To apply color sets to subtitles, select the events you want to change, click the **Subtitle Event** button in the Media and Subtitle pane and choose a color set from the **Colors** drop-down list.

Changing an object's size

Resizing an object

1. Select a button, graphic, or text box with the sizing tool .

2. Click the **Transformations** button on the Properties window, and drag the object's handles or type values in the **X size** and **Y size** boxes to achieve the desired size.
3. If you do not want an image to be stretched when you change the height or width, select the **Maintain aspect ratio** box, click the button, and choose **Yes**.

Tip: If you are resizing a text box and you want the text to automatically adjust to fit the box, choose **Auto** from the **Font Size** drop-down list.

Making all selected objects the same height or width

1. Select the objects you want to adjust. Hold **Ctrl** or **Shift** to select multiple objects.
2. While holding the **Ctrl** or **Shift** key, select the object whose size you want to copy.
3. Click the **Make Same Width** or **Make Same Height** button. All selected objects are adjusted so they match the object that has focus (the last object you selected).

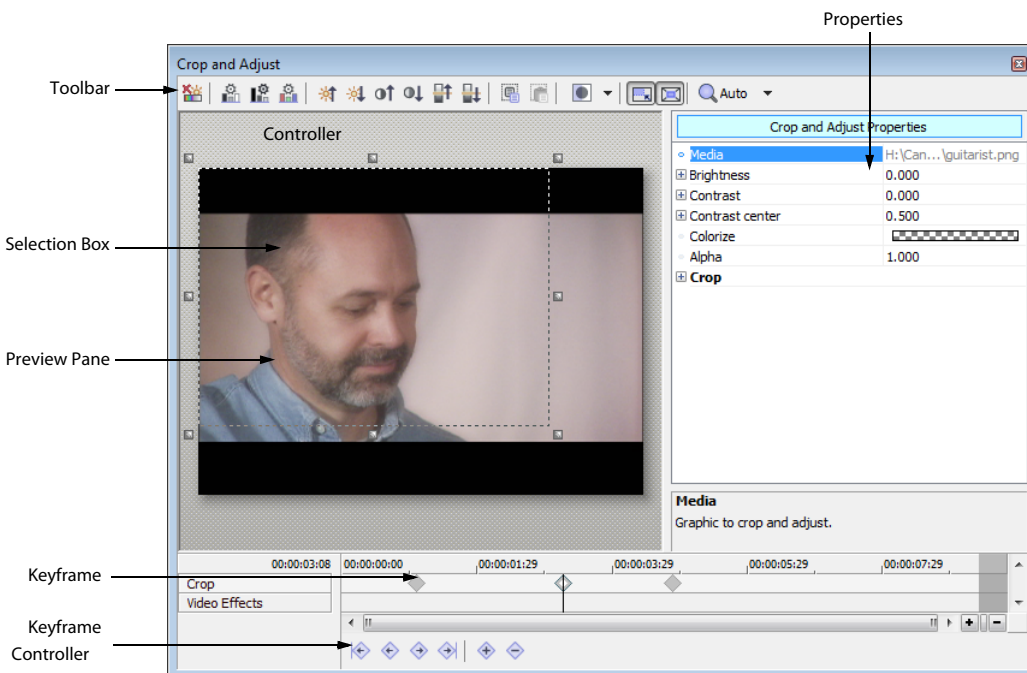
Note: If you resize an object in one direction only, the object will not resize if **Maintain aspect ratio** is set to **Yes** on the **Transformations** page of the Properties window because the image cannot be resized in one direction and still maintain its aspect ratio. You can turn off the **Maintain aspect ratio** setting or resize the object in both directions.

Cropping and adjusting video and graphics

Use the Crop and Adjust window to crop a video or graphic or adjust its appearance. You can set these changes to occur over time through the use of keyframes. The window includes a preview pane so that you can monitor your progress and compare the processed and unprocessed image.

Displaying the Crop and Adjust window

















From the **View** menu, choose **Crop and Adjust** to display or hide the Crop and Adjust window. You can also right-click a graphic in the workspace and choose **Crop and Adjust** from the shortcut menu (or select the **Video** box in the Properties window, click the button, and then choose **Crop and Adjust** from the menu).




Using the toolbar




Use the toolbar to make quick adjustments to a video or image. You can use the display in the Crop and Adjust window to preview your adjustments.












Note: Expand the **Brightness, Contrast, and Contrast center** controls on the right side of the dialog to see the results of your adjustments.

 Reset Effect Properties: Removes all effects from the media	 Increase Contrast Center: Adjusts the anchor point around which green contrast is adjusted.
 Auto Levels: Automatically adjusts the brightness and contrast based on the contents of the selection box. The most abundant colors (either light or dark) are enhanced).	 Decrease Contrast Center: Adjusts the anchor point around which green contrast is adjusted.
 Auto Levels (Dark): Automatically adjusts the brightness and contrast based on the contents of the selection box. The least abundant colors (either light or dark) are enhanced.	 Copy Crop Rectangle to Clipboard: Copies the current selection to the clipboard.
 Automatically adjust brightness/contrast per channel: Automatically adjusts brightness and contrast per channel based on the contents of the selection box. Adjustment is performed independently on each color channel.	 Paste Crop Rectangle from Clipboard: Pastes the current selection from the clipboard.
 Increase Brightness: Increases the brightness of the image.	 Bypass Effects on Regions: Creates a split-screen preview that bypasses all video effects without removing them from your media. By clicking the drop-down arrow to the right of the button, you can choose which portion of the preview will display bypassed effects.
 Decrease Brightness: Decreases the brightness of the image.	 Lock Aspect Ratio: Click if you want the selection box to retain its aspect ratio during resizing. When this button is not selected, the height and width can be resized independently. Press Alt at any time to override these settings.
 Increase Contrast: Increases the contrast of the image.	 Size About Center: Click if you want the selection box to retain its center point when you resize the box by dragging its edges. When this button is not selected, the opposite side of the selection box will remain anchored when you drag the edges to resize it. Press Alt at any time to override these settings.
 Decrease Contrast: Decreases the contrast of the image.	 Zoom Settings: Allows you to choose the magnification of the image. When Auto is selected, the image will zoom to fit the current window size.

Crop and adjust properties

Use the Crop and Adjust Properties controls to specify the settings for adjusting an image's appearance or cropping. Select the specific control and click the  button to display the individual controls.

Item	Description
Media	Displays the location and file name of the currently selected media file.
Brightness	Use the Brightness controls to adjust the brightness of the image. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select the Brightness box, click the  button, and drag the slider (or type a value in the box) to adjust the overall brightness of the image. —or— Click the  button next to the Brightness box to display individual controls for the red, green, and blue channels in the image. Select the Red, Green, or Blue box, click the  button, and drag the slider (or type a value in the box) to adjust the brightness of an individual color channel.


Item	Description
Contrast	<p>Use the Contrast controls to adjust the contrast of the image:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select the Contrast box, click the  button, and drag the slider (or type a value in the box) to adjust the overall contrast of the image. <p>—or—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Click the  button next to the Contrast box to display individual controls for the color channels in the image. Select the Red, Green, or Blue box, click the  button, and drag the slider (or type a value in the box) to adjust the contrast of an individual color channel.
Contrast center	<p>Use the Contrast center controls to set the anchor point around which contrast is adjusted:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select the Contrast center box, click the  button, and drag the slider (or type a value in the box) to adjust the overall contrast of the image. <p>—or—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Click the  button next to the Contrast center box to display individual controls for the color channels in the image. Select the Red, Green, or Blue box, click the  button, and drag the slider (or type a value in the box) to adjust the contrast center of an individual color channel.
Colorize	<p>Use the Colorize controls to add a color tint to the image:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Select the Colorize box and click the  button to display a color picker. Edit the selected color by performing any of the following actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drag the R, G, and B sliders to choose a color, and drag the vertical alpha slider to set transparency. Type values in the R, G, B, and A boxes. Select the eyedropper tool to sample a color from your screen. Click the  button to switch between RGB and HSL color modes. <p>When you're using the color picker, a warning  is displayed when you choose an out-of-gamut color. Click the color swatch below the warning to correct the color.</p>
Alpha	<p>Select the  box, click the button, and drag the slider (or type a value in the box) to adjust the transparency of the image: drag left to increase transparency, or drag right to make the image more opaque.</p>
Crop	<p>Use the Crop controls to add a crop to the edges of the graphic to frame the image:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select the Left box, click the  button, and drag the slider (or type a value in the box) to trim the left edge of the image. Drag the Top slider (or type a value in the box) to trim the top edge of the image. Drag the Right slider (or type a value in the box) to trim the right edge of the image. Drag the Bottom slider (or type a value in the box) to trim the bottom edge of the image.

Cropping graphics



Perform either of the following procedures to crop a video or image:

Drag the handles on the selection box to adjust its size, or drag from the center of the box to change its position. The selection box represents the portion of the image that will be visible.

Notes:

- Click the **Lock Aspect Ratio**  button if you want the selection box to retain its aspect ratio during resizing.
- Right-click the selection box and choose **Match Output Aspect** to force the height:width ratio of the selection box to match the **Video** format setting in your Project Properties.

—or—

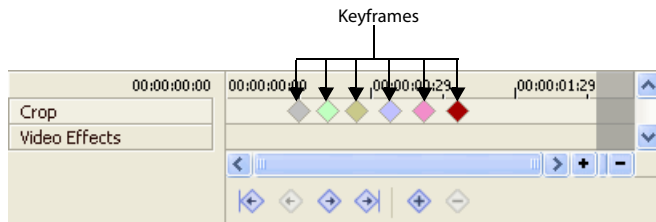
- Click the  button next to the **Crop** box to expand the controls.
- Use the **Crop** controls to add a crop to the edges of the graphic to frame the image:
 - Select the **Left** box, click the  button, and drag the slider (or type a value in the box) to trim the left edge of the image.
 - Drag the **Top** slider (or type a value in the box) to trim the top edge of the image.
 - Drag the **Right** slider (or type a value in the box) to trim the right edge of the image.
 - Drag the **Bottom** slider (or type a value in the box) to trim the bottom edge of the image.

Crop and video effects keyframes

Keyframes can be used in DVD Architect Pro to animate objects by cropping them or changing their size or position over time. Your keyframes define an object's settings at a given point in time. The Keyframe Controller, displayed at the bottom of the Crop and Adjust dialog, allows you to add and remove keyframes and control the parameters for individual keyframes. *For more information, see [Crop and adjust properties](#) on page 62.*


Each keyframe contains a set of parameters for a specified point on the timeline. The settings for intermediate frames are interpolated. Additional keyframes can be added to create more complex effects.

Crop and video effects keyframes are created using the Crop and Adjust window, while transformation (size and position) keyframes are created using the Timeline window. *For more information, see [Transformation keyframes](#) on page 68.*



Note: *Animated button highlights are not supported. If a button has keyframe animation applied, button highlighting is not animated or may not be visible when you burn your project. You will see the button highlighting when you preview your DVD Architect Pro project but not after it is burned.*


Adding keyframes

1. In the Keyframe Controller, click to position the cursor where you want to add a keyframe.
2. Click the **Insert Keyframe** button . A keyframe is added to the Keyframe Controller timeline.

The new keyframe's attributes are copied from the previous keyframe.

Tip: *To quickly add a keyframe, double-click on the Keyframe Controller timeline, or position the cursor on the Keyframe Controller timeline and modify your cropping properties.*

Deleting keyframes

1. Select a keyframe by clicking it.
2. Click the **Delete Keyframe** button .













Navigating between keyframes

To jump to the next or previous keyframe, click the **Previous Keyframe**  and **Next Keyframe**  buttons (or press Ctrl+Left Arrow or Ctrl+Right Arrow).

To jump to the first or last keyframe, click the **First Keyframe**  or **Last Keyframe**  button.



Changing interpolation curves between keyframes

The interpolation curve determines the rate of animation between two keyframe settings. To change the interpolation curve, right-click a selected keyframe and choose a command from the shortcut menu. The curve type is updated for all selected keyframes.

Command	Description	Looks like
Linear 	Keyframe parameters are interpolated in a linear path.	
Fast 	Keyframe parameters are interpolated in a fast logarithmic path.	
Slow 	Keyframe parameters are interpolated in a slow logarithmic path.	
Smooth 	Keyframe parameters are interpolated along a smooth, natural curve.	
Sharp 	Keyframe parameters are interpolated along a sharp curve.	
Hold 	No animation will take place. The keyframe's settings will be maintained until the next keyframe.	

Moving keyframes

After you've set your keyframes, you may need to adjust their positions along the Keyframe Controller timeline. Drag a keyframe to a new position in the timeline to change its position.

Hold Ctrl or Shift while clicking to select multiple keyframes. A selected keyframe is displayed as , and an unselected keyframe is displayed as a .

Editing crop settings

After you've inserted your keyframes, you can use the **Crop** controls in the Crop and Adjust window's Properties pane to specify your cropping settings for individual keyframes.


1. In the Keyframe Controller, select the keyframe you want to edit.
2. In the Properties pane, click the button next to the **Crop** box to display the controls.
3. Edit the crop settings. *For more information, see [Cropping graphics](#) on page 63.*

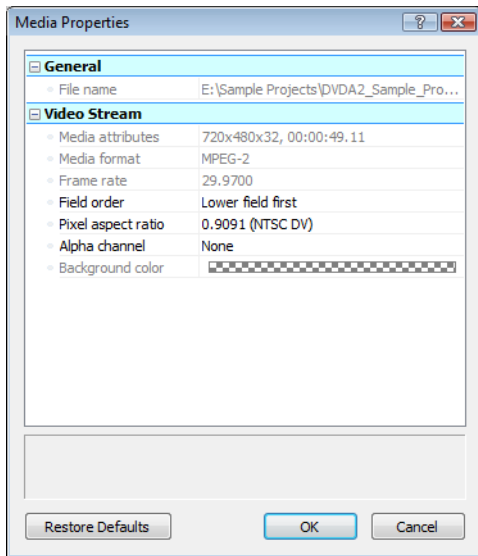
Viewing and editing media properties

The Media Properties pane allows you to display information about the selected media file. The application will try to detect the properties of your media files automatically. In most cases, you will not need to edit file properties.

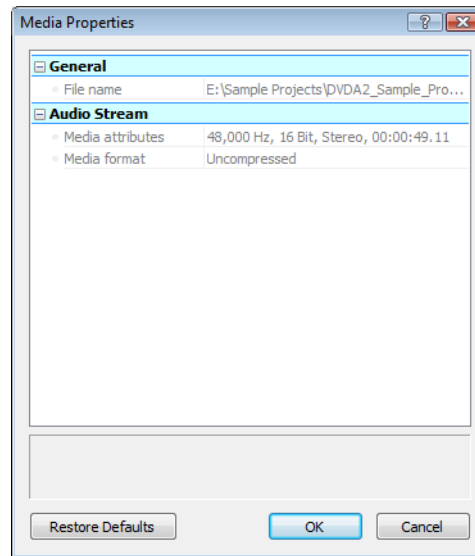
Note: *Editing media properties will affect all instances of the media throughout your project.*

Displaying the Media Properties window

1. Double-click a media file in the Project Overview window or the workspace area.
2. On the Media Properties pane, click **Track Media**.
3. Select the path to the file in the **Audio** or **Video** box.
4. Click the  button and choose **Media Properties** from the menu. The Media Properties dialog is displayed.



Video Media Properties



Audio Media Properties

Editing media properties

General

The **File name** displays the name of the selected media file.

Video Stream


Item	Description
Media attributes	Displays the size, resolution, and length of the selected media file.
Media format	Displays the format of the selected media file.
Frame rate	Displays the frame rate of the selected media file.
Field order	Allows you to choose the field order of the selected media file. It is recommended to review the documentation for your capture/video output card to ensure proper field order. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• None (progressive scan) - Use for viewing on a computer; interlacing is ignored.• Upper field first - Use for video that will be viewed on a television.• Lower field first - Use if the Upper field first displays shaky output or if your hardware manual specifies lower field first.
Pixel aspect ratio	Allows you to choose the pixel aspect ratio of the selected media file. It is recommended to review the documentation for your capture/video output card to ensure proper settings.

Item	Description
Alpha channel	<p>Allows you to choose how the alpha channel will be handled for the selected media file.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Undefined: Video provides no alpha channel information and ignores any alpha channel information and in the file. • None: Video has no alpha channel or there is an alpha channel but it's completely opaque (solid). • Straight (unmatted): Transparency information is maintained in only the alpha channel. Alpha information must be applied to the RGB channels before compositing. • Premultiplied: The standard method of handling alpha information. Transparency information is maintained in the alpha and RGB channels, and the image is ready for compositing. No RGB component exceeds the alpha value. • Premultiplied (dirty): Similar to Premultiplied, but RGB components may exceed the alpha. This setting is used mainly for images created by 3D applications involving compositing of 3D images over a non-solid color image background.
Background color	If you selected Premultiplied or Premultiplied (dirty) from the Alpha channel drop-down, then this allows you to choose the background color of the selected media file.

Audio Stream

Item	Description
Media attributes	Displays the size, resolution, and length of the selected media file.
Media format	Displays the format of the selected media file.

Opening in Graphics Editor

If you need to edit a graphics file from your project, right-click a graphic in the workspace and choose **Open in Graphics Editor** from the shortcut menu (or select the **Video** box in the Properties window, click the  button, and then choose **Open in Graphics Editor** from the menu) to start your graphic-editing application and modify the selected image.




After you have edited and saved the file, DVD Architect Pro software automatically detects the updated file and updates it in the project.

You can specify the location of your preferred graphics editor on the **Video Tab** in the Preferences dialog. *For more information, see [Video tab](#) on page 165.*

Moving and arranging objects

You have many options for moving, arranging, and aligning objects on your menus manually or automatically. Snapping features give you more precise control over the movement and alignment of your objects.

Changing the position of an object

1. Select a button, graphic, or text box with the selection tool , sizing tool , or navigation tool .
2. On the Menu Page Properties pane of the Properties window, click **General**.
3. Drag an object in the workspace or type values in the **X position** and **Y position** boxes to set the object's center point.

The X and Y coordinates are based on the frame size of your project. For example, if you're creating an NTSC project with a frame size of 720x480, (0,0) is the top-left corner of the frame, and (720,480) is the lower-right corner.

Tips: Hold *Shift* while dragging to defeat horizontal snapping. Hold *Ctrl* while dragging to defeat vertical snapping. Hold *Alt* while dragging to constrain to horizontal or vertical motion.

Transformation keyframes

Transformation keyframes allow you to change the size and position of a graphic over time, creating an animated effect. For example, you could use this feature to make a menu's button appear to move or to fly in from offscreen, or you could hide a menu's button until playback reaches the loop point.

Transformation keyframes are inserted and displayed in the timeline below your video track, and the keyframe size and position changes can be edited in the Properties window and in the workspace. You can use this feature for menus, picture compilations, and music/video compilations.

Using the timeline, you can drag keyframes to adjust their position, add and delete keyframes, and change the interpolation curve between keyframes.

Notes:

- *Crop and video effect keyframes are set in the Crop and Adjust window and are not visible in the timeline. For more information, see [Crop and video effects keyframes](#) on page 64.*
- *To insert transformation keyframes for a button, **Show Before Loop Point** must be set to **Yes** for the object in the Transformations page in the item's Properties window, and the loop point must be set to a point later than 00:00:00.000 on the timeline. For more information, see [Animating buttons with keyframes](#) on page 111.*
- *Transformation keyframes are not available for buttons on video or for graphics inserted on video titles. For more information, see [Adding buttons to videos](#) on page 109.*

Adding transformation keyframes

1. In the workspace, select the item to which you want to add a keyframe.
2. In the Timeline window, right-click in the Transformations keyframe bar below your video track and choose Insert from the shortcut menu. A keyframe is added to the Transformation keyframe bar.
3. Subsequent keyframe's attributes are copied from the previous keyframe.

Tips: To quickly add a keyframe, perform any of the following steps:







- Double-click on the Transformation keyframe bar.
- Position the cursor on the Transformation keyframe bar and modify your Transformation properties in the Properties window.
- Select the keyframe tool in the workspace and drag the object. For more information, see [The Keyframe tool](#) on page 69.






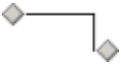
Removing keyframes

Right-click a keyframe and choose **Delete** from the submenu.

Changing the interpolation curve between keyframes



The interpolation curve determines the rate of animation between two keyframe settings. To change the interpolation curve, right-click a selected keyframe and choose a command from the shortcut menu. The curve type is updated for all selected keyframes.

Command	Description	Looks like
Linear 	Keyframe parameters are interpolated in a linear path.	
Fast 	Keyframe parameters are interpolated in a fast logarithmic path.	
Slow 	Keyframe parameters are interpolated in a slow logarithmic path.	

Command	Description	Looks like
Smooth 	Keyframe parameters are interpolated along a smooth, natural curve.	
Sharp 	Keyframe parameters are interpolated along a sharp curve.	
Hold 	No animation will take place. The keyframe's settings will be maintained until the next keyframe.	

Moving keyframes

After you've set your keyframes, you may need to adjust their positions along the timeline. Drag a keyframe to a new position in the timeline to change its position.

Hold Ctrl or Shift while clicking to select multiple keyframes. A selected keyframe is displayed as , and an unselected keyframe is displayed as a .


Editing size and position settings

After you've inserted a keyframe, you can set the size and/or position settings for the object in the Transformation page of the Properties window.

Note: You can use the keyframe tool in the workspace for a visual representation of an item's keyframe size and position settings.


1. In the workspace, select the object to which you have added keyframes. For more information, see [Workspace \(Alt+0\)](#) on page 15.
2. In the Properties window, click the Transformations button.
3. Edit the size and position settings on the Transformations page.

The Keyframe tool

From the Edit menu, choose **Editing Tool**, and then choose **Keyframe Tool**  to view and edit information about the size and position changes defined by an object's transformation keyframes. For more information, see [Transformation keyframes](#) on page 68.

Tip: If you want to view size and position changes even when the keyframe tool is not selected, choose **Workspace Overlays** from the View menu, and then choose **Show Keyframe Overlay** from the submenu. Select objects with the keyframe overlay displayed to see a graphical display of size and position changes for the object.

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu you want to edit.

2. Select an object in the workspace with the keyframe tool . Lines and arrows are displayed to indicate the currently assigned path. Control points mark the location of keyframes along the path. For more information, see [Workspace \(Alt+0\)](#) on page 15.



3. Drag the keyframe control points to edit an object's position or path. Using the control points, you can also create Bézier curves that the object will follow during the animation. If you have multiple keyframes, intermediate control points are inserted as pairs so you can set your tangent. Edit the intermediate control points by right-clicking and choosing an option from the shortcut menu:

Item	Description
Smooth	As you drag a control point, the tangent follows a straight line, and the paired control points remain equidistant from the main path.
Straight	As you drag a control point, the tangent follows a straight line, but the other control point retains its original distance from the main path.
Corner	As you drag a control point, the location of the other control point remains fixed, allowing you to create an angled tangent from the main path.




Tip: These settings cannot be applied to end control points, which mark the first and last keyframes in a series.

Note: You can also use the Transformations page in the Properties window to view and edit object size and position.

Editing button order for a menu

From the Edit menu, choose **Button Order** to display the Button Order dialog, where you can set the order for buttons on the selected menu.

The #1 button is the default selected button when you navigate to a menu unless you've used the **Destination Button** control on the Action or End Action page of the Properties window to specify a different destination button. For information editing buttons on video, see [Editing button order for a video](#) on page 110.

1. Choose the menu you want to edit:
 - Select a menu in the Project Overview window.
 - or—
 - Click the down arrow in the address bar to select a menu.
 - or—
 - Click the **Back to Parent** , **Previous Page** , and **Next Page**  buttons in the workspace to navigate your menus.
2. From the Edit menu, choose **Button Order**. The Button Order dialog is displayed.




By default, the button order matches the order in which you added buttons to the menu. If you started with a blank menu and added a picture compilation and then a music/video compilation, the picture compilation would be the default (first) button.







3. Select a button and click the **Move Up** or **Move Down** buttons to change the selected button's order.
4. Repeat step 3 as needed.

For a menu, the #1 button is the default selected button. The order of subsequent buttons has no effect on your menu.

5. Click **OK** to close the Button Order dialog and save your changes.

Aligning objects in a menu

1. Select the selection , sizing , or navigation  tool.
2. Select the objects you want to align. You can select multiple objects at once using the Shift key for consecutive files or the Ctrl key for nonconsecutive files.
3. While holding the Ctrl or Shift key, select the object to which you want to align the selected objects.
4. Click a button on the left edge of the workspace:

Tool	Name	Description
	Align Left	Aligns all selected objects to the left edge of the last-selected object.
	Align Horizontal Center	Aligns all selected objects to the horizontal center of the last-selected object.
	Align Right	Aligns all selected objects to the right edge of the last-selected object.
	Align Top	Aligns all selected objects to the top edge of the last-selected object.
	Align Vertical Center	Aligns all selected objects to the vertical center of the last-selected object.
	Align Bottom	Aligns all selected objects to the bottom edge of the last-selected object.

Automatically aligning objects based on current theme

If you've applied a theme to a menu, menu objects can automatically align when you add media to the menu.






Select the **Double-clicking files in Explorer reapplies theme layout** check box on the **General** tab of the Preferences dialog if you want to automatically realign objects according to the current theme when you double-click media files in the Explorer window. When you double-click a file, the new file is added, and the objects are realigned on the menu.

When the check box is cleared, the media files are added to the menu and existing object positions are preserved.






From the **Edit** menu, choose **Reapply Theme Layout** to realign objects at any time. *For more information on themes, see [Working with themes](#) on page 132.*

Note: *If you created menus using layered .psd files, choose **Reapply Layout from File** from the **Edit** menu to restore the menu to match the appearance of the saved .psd file. For more information, see [Reapplying a file's layout to menu objects](#) on page 46.*




Centering objects

1. Select the selection tool , sizing tool , or navigation tool .
2. Select the objects you want to align. You can select multiple files at once using the Shift key for consecutive files or the Ctrl key for nonconsecutive files.
3. Click a button on the left edge of the workspace:
 - The **Horizontal Centering** button  moves the selected objects to the horizontal center of the screen.
 - The **Vertical Centering** button  moves the selected objects to the vertical center of the screen.

Adjusting object spacing

1. Select the selection tool , sizing tool , or navigation tool .
2. Select the objects you want to adjust. You can select multiple files at once using the Shift key for consecutive files or the Ctrl key for nonconsecutive files. You must have at least three objects selected to adjust the objects' vertical or horizontal spacing.
3. Click a button on the left edge of the workspace:
 - The **Space Across** button  adjusts the selected items so an equal amount of horizontal space exists between the objects.
 - The **Space Down** button  adjusts the selected items so an equal amount of vertical space exists between the objects.

Deleting objects

1. Select the selection tool , sizing tool , or navigation tool .
2. Select the objects you want to delete. You can select multiple files at once using the Shift key for consecutive files or the Ctrl key for nonconsecutive files.
3. From the **Edit** menu, choose **Delete**. The objects are deleted from the menu and from your project.

Enabling snapping

To use snapping, choose **Enable Snapping** from the **Options** menu. Once snapping is enabled, there are several options to which objects can snap:

- The grid in the workspace.
- The borders of other objects.
- Title and action safe areas.

Tip: To temporarily override horizontal snapping, hold the Shift key. To temporarily override vertical snapping, hold the Ctrl key.

Snapping to the grid

Once snapping is enabled, choose **Snap to Grid** from the **Options** menu to allow objects to snap to the workspace's grid. To show or hide the grid, choose **Workspace Overlays** from the **View** menu, and then choose **Show Grid** from the submenu.

Note: To change the color or spacing of the grid, choose **Grid Settings** from the **Options** menu.

Snapping to other objects

Once snapping is enabled, choose **Snap to Objects** from the **Options** menu to allow objects to snap to other objects on the menu.

Snapping to safe areas

Once snapping is enabled, choose **Snap to Safe Areas** from the **Options** menu to allow objects to snap to the title safe or action safe areas.

The title safe area indicates the region within which titles will always be visible on a television monitor. To show or hide this area, choose **Workspace Overlays** from the **View** menu, and then choose **Show Title Safe Area** from the submenu.

The action safe area indicates the region within which motion will always be visible on a television monitor. To show or hide this area, choose **Workspace Overlays** from the **View** menu, and then choose **Show Action Safe Area** from the submenu.

Using automatic button actions





Usually, a user must press the Enter button on the DVD or Blu-ray Disc remote control to perform an action. However, with the automatic button feature, the button's action is performed when the button is selected. See [Action on page 73](#) for more information on the auto-activate feature.

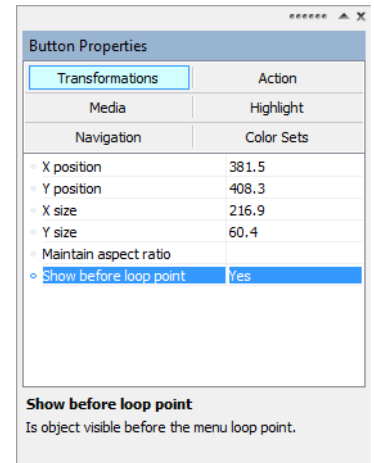
Note: Automatic button actions are useful for navigation buttons, such as previous/next page buttons in multipage menus. This will allow the disc to automatically advance to the next page as soon as the **Next Page** button is selected.

Button properties




The Button Properties pane in the Properties window is available when you have a button selected in the workspace. Use these controls to change the appearance, behavior, and navigation settings for the selected button.

To edit the button's properties, perform the following steps:

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu you want to edit.
2. Select a button with the selection tool , sizing tool , or navigation tool .
3. Click the property button that you would like to edit.
4. Click the specific property, click the  button, and choose a setting from the drop-down list.



Transformations

Item	Description
X position	Allows you to edit the X and Y position values to change the center of the selected button's position.
Y position	Perform any of the following to change the setting: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select the number and type a new value. • Use the spin controls to adjust the value. • Select the value and click the  button to display a slider that you can use to adjust the value. <p>Note: These coordinates are based on the frame size of your project. For example, if you're creating an NTSC project with a frame size of 720x480, (0,0) is the top-left corner of the frame, and (720,480) is the lower-right corner.</p>
X size	Allows you to edit the X and Y size values to change the size of the selected button.
Y size	Perform any of the following to change the setting: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select the number and type a new value. • Use the spin controls to adjust the value. • Select the value and click the  button to display a slider that you can use to adjust the value.
Maintain aspect ratio	Allows you to choose if you want the button image to be stretched when you change the height or width.
Show Before Loop Point	Click the  button and select Yes or No if you want the object to be visible before the loop point.

Action

Action controls determine what happens when a user selects a button on your menu.

Item	Description
Command	Determines what happens after the last track plays. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Link: you can link to any menu, media file, and chapter point. Use the Destination, Destination chapter, Destination item, or Destination button controls to set the target. You can also use the Destination button control to choose the default selected button in the destination menu. • Stop: playback will stop of the current title. • Resume: the button will resume playback of the current title from the point when a Stop button was selected. If the title specified in the Destination control is not the last title played, playback will begin at the start.
Destination	When Link is selected in the Command drop-down list, choose the menu, title, or playlists that will be displayed. When Resume is selected in the Command drop-down list, choose the video, picture compilation, or music/video compilation that will resume playback when the button is activated.
Destination chapter	When your button links to a title or playlist, use the Destination Chapter drop-down list to choose the specific chapter in the destination file that will be displayed.
Destination item	When your button links to a menu, choose Start or Loop Point to indicate the point from which the menu will be played.
Destination button	When your button links to a menu, use the Destination button drop-down list to choose the button you want to use as the default selected button in the destination menu. If you choose Default , the first button listed under the menu in the Project Overview window is used as the default.

Item	Description
Set audio track	Choose a setting from the drop-down list to choose which audio track will be played in a destination title. Choose No change to use the last-set track. Note: <i>If you use the Set audio track control to change the audio track, the new track will be used when you navigate between titles unless another button action, end action, or user action (via the remote control) changes the track.</i>
Set subtitle track	Choose a setting from the drop-down list to choose which subtitle track will be played in a destination title. Choose Off to turn subtitles off, or choose No change to use the last-set track. Note: <i>If you use the Set subtitle track control to change the subtitle track, the new track will be used when you navigate between titles unless another button action, end action, or user action (via the remote control) changes the track.</i>
Set video angle	Choose a setting from the drop-down list to choose which video angle will be played in a destination title. Choose No change to use the last-set track. Note: <i>If you use the Set video angle control to change the video angle, the new angle will be used when you navigate between titles unless another button action, end action, or user action (via the remote control) changes the angle.</i>
Auto-activate	Allows you to choose whether you want the button action to be performed automatically when the button is selected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When Yes is selected, the user doesn't need to press the Enter button on the remote control. • When No is selected, the user will select a button with the arrow buttons on the remote control and then press the Enter button to activate it.

Media

The media controls determine the image displayed for buttons that navigate to picture compilations, music/video compilations, or video titles.

Button style

The button style determines how the selected button is displayed on your menu.

- Choose **Text only** to display a text-only link.
- Choose **Image only** to display a graphical button only.
- Choose **Text and image** to display a graphical button with a text label.

Thumbnail and frame media

A button's thumbnail can be any simple image file or video file you want to use. If you choose a video file, you can use a single frame from the video to display in the button, or you can animate the button by playing the video.

The **Thumbnail Media** and **Frame Media** boxes display the path to the current thumbnail and frame image file.

Tip: You can quickly replace a button by selecting the button in the workspace and double-clicking a button in the Buttons window. For more information, see [Buttons window \(Alt+5\)](#) on page 18.

Mask

A mask file determines which part of the thumbnail or mask file is visible. *For more information, see [Creating custom masks](#) on page 125.*


Select a command from the menu, where you can choose a mask file, view media properties, crop and adjust media settings, remove the current file, or open in a graphics editor.

For additional mask controls, click the **+** button to the left of the **Mask** heading.

Item	Description
Layer	If the current mask file uses layers, then this control allows you to choose a single layer or the combined layers as a mask for your thumbnail image or button frame.

Start time

If you're using an animated file as a thumbnail or button frame, the **Start time** setting determines the point at which playback will start in the animated button or frame. If you want to display a single frame from an animated file as a static image or button frame, the **Start time** setting determines which frame is displayed.

To change the start time, select the box and type a new setting or select the box and click the  button to display a slider that you can use to adjust the setting.

Style

If you're using an animated file as a thumbnail or frame, you can choose a setting from the **Style** drop-down list to determine whether the button or frame is displayed as a still image or animated button.

- Choose **Still** to display a static image in the button or the frame. If your thumbnail or frame file is animated, the **Start time** setting determines which frame is displayed.
- Choose **Animated** to play an animated file in the button frame.

Highlight


Note: *Animated button highlights are not supported. If a button has keyframe animation applied, button highlighting is not animated or may not be visible when you burn your project. You will see the button highlighting when you preview your DVD Architect Pro project but not after it is burned. For more information, see [Crop and video effects keyframes](#) on page 64.*

Style

Highlight controls determine the appearance of a button when it is selected and activated.

Item	Description
Rectangle	Displays a colored rectangle over the button's text and image.
Mask overlay	Highlights the button's text and image.
Text rectangle	Displays a colored rectangle around the button text.
Image rectangle	Displays a colored rectangle around the button image.
Text mask overlay	Highlights the button text.
Image mask overlay	Highlights the button image.
Underline	Displays an underline under the button.
Custom	Allows you to specify a custom highlighting mask image and transparency style.

Mask


If you selected **Custom** from the **Style** menu, select the **Mask** box and click  to display a menu where you can choose a mask file, view media properties, crop and adjust media settings, remove the current file, or open in a graphics editor.

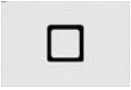


For additional mask controls, click the  button to the left of the **Mask** heading.

Item	Description
Layer	If the current mask file uses layers, then this control allows you to choose a single layer or the combined layers as a highlight mask.

Note: *If you want to use the combined layers as a mask, choose **Composited layer**.*


Mask mapping

If you selected **Custom** from the **Style** menu, select the **Mask mapping** box, click the  button, and choose a setting to indicate how transparency is determined from the mask image:

Mapping Mode	Description	Pixel Information
 Transparency	Maps the alpha channel of the menu highlight mask to the four colors used in the color set selected in the Selected button colors or Activated button colors drop-down list on the General page of the Menu Page Properties pane.	The most opaque pixels (those with alpha values of 192 to 255) are mapped to the color set's fill color (color 1), and the most transparent pixels (those with alpha values of 0 to 63) are mapped to the color set's transparent color (color 4).
 Intensity	Maps the average pixel intensity of the menu highlight mask to the four colors used in the color set selected in the Selected button colors or Activated button colors drop-down list.	The lightest pixels (those with an average intensity of 192 to 255) are mapped to the color set's fill color (color 1), and the darkest pixels (those with an average intensity of 0 to 63) are mapped to the color set's transparent color (color 4).
 Color Channel	Maps color channels in the menu highlight mask to the four colors used in the color set selected in the Selected button colors or Activated button colors drop-down list.	A pixel containing any red channel component uses the color set's fill color (color 1), a pixel containing any green channel component uses the color set's anti-alias color (color 2), a pixel containing any blue component uses the color set's outline/background color (color 3), and a completely black pixel uses the color set's transparent color (color 4).

Navigation

The navigation controls determine which button is selected when you use the Left, Right, Up, and Down buttons on your DVD or Blu-ray Disc remote control.

Select the **Left**, **Right**, **Up**, or **Down** box, click the  button, and choose a setting to indicate which button is selected when you press the corresponding button on your remote control.

Note: Choose **Auto** if you want the software to automatically determine navigation based on button layout.

Color Sets


Color sets determine which colors are used to indicate selected, activated, and inactive buttons on your menu page. You can have four project-wide color sets that are available to every menu page in your project, and each menu page in your project can also have up to four custom color sets with four colors each. Each color set includes a fill color, outline/background color, anti-alias color, and transparent color.

Use the Color Sets page to edit the color sets that will be available for the selected menu, and then use the General page in the Menu Page Properties pane to choose which color sets are used for the selected, activated, and inactive buttons on your menu. *For more information, see [Using color sets](#) on page 60.*


Button Region

The button region control allows you to set the highlight colors for buttons within button regions on the timeline. *For more information, see [Inserting buttons-on-video markers](#) on page 104.*


Selected button colors



Select the  button and choose a color set that will be used to display the selected button on a page. Choose **None** if you do not want to use color sets to display button highlighting.

Activated button colors

Select the  button and choose a color set that will be used to display the selected button when you press **Enter** on the DVD or Blu-ray Disc remote control to activate it. Choose **None** if you do not want to use color sets to display button highlighting.







Inactive button/subtitle colors

For additional button controls, select the  button to the left of the **Inactive Button/Subtitle Colors** heading.

Item	Description
Default colors	Select the  button and choose a color set that will be used to display unselected buttons on the menu. Choose None if you do not want to use color sets to display button highlighting
Use subtitle colors	If there are buttons placed in a graphic subtitle, you can set the color of the unselected buttons. Select the  button and choose No if you don't want to use color sets for unselected buttons. Select When available if a color set has been designated for the subtitle.

Copying and pasting attributes







Copying and pasting attributes allows you to quickly apply settings from one item in your project to another. You can paste any one or all of the following attributes:

- Button Frame
 - Media Effects
 - Text Properties
 - Size
 - Size and Position
1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu that has the object that you want to copy.
 2. Select the object or objects with the selection tool , sizing tool , or navigation tool .
 3. From the **Edit** menu, choose **Copy**.
 4. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu that has the object that you would like to edit.
 5. Select a button, text box, or graphic with the selection tool , sizing tool , or navigation tool .



Alternatively, press **Ctrl** or **Shift** while clicking to select multiple items.

6. From the **Edit** menu, choose **Paste Attributes**, and then choose one of the following items from the submenu:

Item	Description
 Button Frame	Replaces the button frame and associated mask of the selected object with the attributes from the button you copied.
 Media Effects	Replaces media effects of the selected object with the attributes from the object you copied.
 Text Properties	Replaces text properties of the selected object with the attributes from the text you copied. Note: The actual text is not replaced.
 Size	Changes the size of the selected object with the size of the object you copied.
 Size and Position	Changes the size and position of the selected object with the size and position of the object you copied.
 All	Replaces all attributes of the selected object with the attributes of the copied object.

When you are copying and pasting attribute and have multiple objects selected, the software will assign attributes according to the following rules:


- If you copy a single object and paste size and position (or all attributes) to multiple selected objects, attributes will be pasted to the first object only to avoid creating overlapping objects.
- Properties are pasted from objects of the same type: text attributes are pasted to text objects, graphic properties are pasted to graphic objects, and button properties are pasted to buttons. However, you can paste size, position, and media effects between buttons and graphic objects.
- Button properties are pasted based on the order in the Project Overview window: for example, if you copy buttons 1 through 3 in one menu and then paste attributes to buttons 1 through 3 in another menu, attributes will be pasted from button 1 to button 1, button 2 to button 2, and button 3 to button 3. If you copy buttons 1 through 3 in one menu and then paste attributes to buttons 5 through 7 in another menu, attributes will be pasted from button 1 to button 5, button 2 to button 6, and button 3 to button 7.
- Properties are pasted based on object position: for example, if you copy two text objects in one menu and then paste attributes to two text objects in another menu, the attributes from each text object in the source menu will be pasted to the closest text object in the destination menu.

The Navigation tool

Navigation controls determine which button is selected when you use the Up, Down, Left, and Right buttons on your DVD or Blu-ray Disc remote control.

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu you want to edit.
2. From the **Edit** menu, choose **Editing Tool**, and then choose **Navigation Tool**.




Click the **Navigation Tool** button  in the Editing Toolbar area.

3. Select a button in the workspace. Arrows are displayed to indicate the current navigation.

Note: *White arrows represent autolinked navigation while blue arrows represent links that have been manually set.*



4. Drag the navigation anchors  to edit a button's navigation. Refer to the following tips for additional information on button navigation:

If	Then
You want the application to automatically assign navigation based on the button layout	Right-click a navigation anchor and choose Autolink from the shortcut menu (or double-click the anchor).

Note: *This setting only affects the navigation anchor that you click.*

You want to link a button to the current page	Right-click a navigation anchor and choose Link to Self from the shortcut menu.
---	--

Setting object order

Object order specifies the layering of objects on your menu. Objects with lower numbers are located toward the bottom. The larger the number, the closer the object is to the front.

Viewing object order

To view the numbers assigned to each object in the current menu, choose **Workspace Overlays** from the **View** menu, and then choose **Show Object Order** from the submenu.

Changing object order

1. Click the object you want to move forward or backward in the layer.
2. From the **Edit** menu, choose **Object Order**, and then choose the appropriate layering command from the submenu:
 - **Move to Top** — moves the selected object to the top layer
 - **Move to Bottom** — moves the selected object to the bottom layer
 - **Move Forward** — moves the selected object forward one layer
 - **Move Back** — moves the selected object back one layer

Chapter 5: Creating a Music/Video Compilation

You can create a DVD Architect™ Pro project that contains a single music or video compilation, or you can add a music/video compilation to an existing menu.

A music/video compilation contains a list of audio or video files. You can display text (such as a song title or caption) while each file plays, and for music/video compilations, you can choose a video or image to display in the background.

In a video compilation, you create a series of videos that play sequentially. This sort of video compilation behaves much like a playlist, but it will be written to disc as a single video title set. If you have a project with many short videos, this loophole in the 99-title-set limitation imposed by the DVD specification can save you from re-rendering and combining media. For more information, see [Adding a playlist to a menu on page 99](#).

Tip: If the audio in a compilation item is longer than the video, the last frame is frozen until the end of the audio. If the video is interlaced, some DVD players will not display this frame correctly. Recompressing your compilation as progressive-scan video will avoid this problem.

On the Video tab of the Optimize Disc dialog, click the **Progressive** box and choose **Yes** or **Auto** for your music/video compilation. If you choose **Yes**, each compilation item is recompressed as a separate progressive-scan title. If you choose **Auto**, each compilation item is recompressed as a separate title and will match the format of the source media. If the audio is longer than the video, the compilation item will be recompressed as progressive-scan video to prevent artifacts when the last frame is held. For more information, see [Optimizing your project on page 39](#).

Note: Each title in a DVD project can have no more than 99 chapter markers. Each title in a Blu-ray Disc project can have no more than 999 chapter markers.

In a compilation with more songs or videos than chapter markers, you can navigate to the last chapter marker with the Next Chapter button on the remote control, and then use the Fast Forward button to navigate past the last chapter.

If you'd like to learn more about starting a project and locating media, please see [Getting Started on page 25](#).

Adding a music/video compilation to a menu

If you want to add a music or video compilation to a menu in an existing menu-based project, the process is easy.

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu from which you want to link to the music/video compilation.
2. From the **Insert** menu, choose **Music/Video Compilation**. A button is added to the menu as a link to the compilation.



Click the **Insert Object**  button in the Project Overview window and then click the **Insert Music/Video Compilation** button .

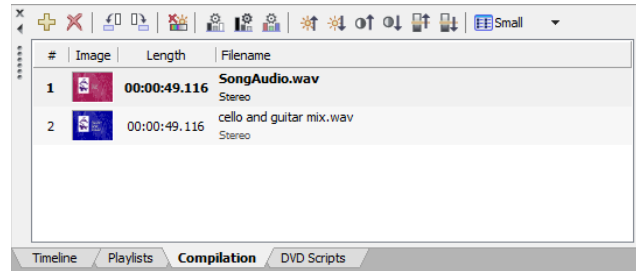
3. Double-click the music/video compilation's button to begin assembling your compilation.

Tip: Buttons can be added to music or video compilations. For more information, see [Adding buttons to videos on page 109](#).

Adding audio

There are several ways to add audio to your compilation:

- Use the Explorer window to locate and select audio files and drag them to the Compilation window. You can select multiple files at once using the Shift key for consecutive files or the Ctrl key for nonconsecutive files. Files are added to the compilation list wherever you drop them.
- Use the Explorer window to locate audio files. Double-click a file to add it to the bottom of the list in the Compilation window.
- From the **Insert** menu, choose **Slide**. The Insert Slide dialog is displayed. Select a song and click the **Open** button. The song is inserted above the currently selected song in the list.



Note: If you want the song name automatically inserted on the slide for each song, choose **Auto-Insert Track Title** from the **Options** menu. Otherwise, you can manually add the text to each slide. For more information, see [Adding and editing text](#) on page 83.

Replacing an audio file

There are several ways to replace a song's audio:

- Right-click a song in the Timeline and choose **Set Audio** from the shortcut menu. The Set Audio dialog is displayed. Select a new song and click the **Open** button. The audio is replaced with your new selection.
- Drag an audio file from the Explorer window or Microsoft Windows® Explorer onto an existing song in the Compilation window. The existing song is replaced with the dragged file.
- Drag an audio file from the Explorer window or Microsoft Windows Explorer and drop it on a song in the Timeline window.
- Select a song in the Compilation window. From the **Edit** menu, choose **Slide Audio** and then choose **Set From File**. The Set Audio dialog is displayed. Select a new song and click the **Open** button. The audio is replaced with your new selection.
- On the Music/Video Compilation Properties pane, click the **Slide** button. Click **Audio**, click the button, and choose **Replace** from the menu. The Open Media dialog is displayed. Select a new song and click the **Open** button. The audio is replaced with your new selection.

Adding and editing images or videos

Inserting images or videos

You can choose an image or video for each song in your compilation. The image or video will display on screen while the song is playing.

Note: If you have a display device that is susceptible to burn-in (such as a rear-projection television), do not use static text or bright static graphics in any scene that will be displayed on screen for an extended period of time.

There are several ways to add an image or video to a song:


- Select a song. In the Explorer window, double-click an image. The image is added to the selected song.
- Select a song. From the **Edit** menu, choose **Slide Video/Image**, and then choose **Set** from the submenu. The Set Video/Image dialog is displayed. Select an image and click the **Open** button. The image or video is added to the song.
- Select an image in the Explorer window and drag it to a song.
- Right-click a song and choose **Set Video/Image** from the shortcut menu. The Set Video/Image dialog is displayed. Select an image and click the **Open** button. The image or video is added to the song.
- On the Music/Video Compilation Properties pane, click the **Slide** button. Click **Video**, click the button, and choose **Replace** from the menu. The Open Media dialog is displayed. Select a new video or image file and click the **Open** button. The video or image is replaced with your new selection.

Replacing an image or video



1. Right-click the image you want to replace and choose **Set Video/Image** from the shortcut menu. The Set Video/Image dialog is displayed.
2. Select a replacement file and click the **Open** button.

Setting image stretching or scaling

You can use the tools at the top of the Compilation window to rotate a song's image or set the stretch type that will be used to scale the image.

1. Select an item in the Compilation window.
2. On the Music/Video Compilation Properties pane, click the **Slide** button.
3. Click **Stretch type**, click the  button and choose one of the following stretch types:
 - **Letterbox** — the image is displayed without scaling, and black letterboxing bars are added above and below or on the sides as needed.
 - **Zoom to fit** — the image is magnified to fill the screen.
 - **Stretch to fit** — the image is stretched to fill the screen. This may cause distortion in the image.


Rotating an image

1. Select a song in the Compilation window.
2. Click the **Rotate counterclockwise**  or **Rotate clockwise**  button.

Adjusting brightness and contrast or editing the image

1. Double-click a music/video compilation in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the music/video compilation that you want to edit.
2. Select an item in the Compilation window.
3. Use the buttons at the top of the Compilation window to adjust the appearance. *For more information, see [Compilation window \(Alt+7\)](#) on page 18.*

-or-

On the Music/Video Compilation Properties pane, click the **Slide** button. Select **Video**, click the  button and choose **Crop and Adjust** (to display the Crop and Adjust dialog) or **Open in Graphics Editor** (to edit the image in an external image editor) from the menu. *For more information, see [Cropping and adjusting video and graphics](#) on page 61.*

Adding and editing text







Adding text

You can add text to be displayed while each song is playing.


Note: *If you want the song name automatically inserted for each song, choose **Auto-Insert Track Title** from the **Options** menu.*

1. Select a song in the Compilation window.
2. From the **Insert** menu, choose **Text**. A text box is added to the workspace.
3. Type your text in the text box.

Formatting text


1. Select a song in the Compilation window.
2. If necessary, click the selection tool  or sizing tool  in the editing toolbar to make it the active tool.
3. In the workspace, click the text box and use the text bar to edit your text properties:
 - Choose a font from the drop-down list to set the typeface for your text.
 - Choose a font size from the drop-down list. Choose **Auto** to have the text automatically adjust to fit the size of the text box.
 - Click the **Bold** , **Italic** , or **Shadow**  buttons to toggle your font effects as desired.
 - Set your text justification options as desired. For more information, see [Text bar \(Alt+2\)](#) on page 16.
 - Click the down arrow next to the color swatch button  to display the color picker, where you can set the red, green, blue, and alpha channels for your text.

Moving text

1. Select a song in the Compilation window.
2. If necessary, click the selection tool  in the editing toolbar to make it the active tool.
3. In the workspace, drag the text box to the desired location, or click **Transformations** in the Properties window to type a new location for the text box in the **X position** and **Y position** boxes.



Tip: You can also use transformation keyframes to animate text in your project. For more information, see [Transformation keyframes](#) on page 68.

Deleting text

1. Select a song in the Compilation window.
2. If necessary, click the selection tool  in the editing toolbar to make it the active tool.
3. In the workspace, select the text box you want to delete.
4. From the **Edit** menu, choose **Delete**.

Tip: You can add graphics to text and use keyframes to animate them. For information about adding graphics and using keyframes, see [Adding graphics](#) on page 53 and [Transformation keyframes](#) on page 68.

Setting thumbnail display

You can set the size of the thumbnail displayed for the song images in the Compilation window. Click the  button to the right of the **Thumbnail Size** button  and choose **Small**, **Medium**, or **Large** to select the desired size.

Music/video compilation properties

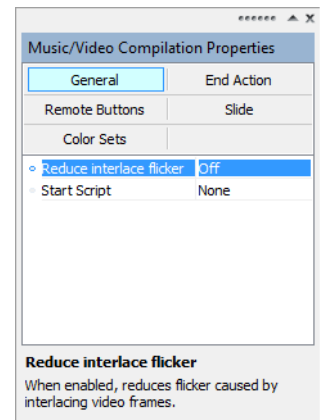
The Music/Video Compilation Properties pane in the Properties window allows you to adjust the end actions and remote control button behavior for the selected music or video compilation.

To edit the music or video compilation's properties, perform the following steps:

1. If the window isn't already visible, choose **Properties** from the View menu.
2. Double-click a music or video compilation in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the compilation you want to edit.
3. Click a button at the top of the Properties window.

General

Select the **Reduce interlace flicker** box, click the button, and choose a setting from the drop-down list to turn flicker reduction on or off. Turn flicker reduction on when using still images that contain thin horizontal lines.



If you have already created at least one DVD script in your project, select the **Start Script** box, click the button, and choose the script that will be played when the music/video compilation is accessed.



Scripting is not available for Blu-ray Disc™ projects.

End Action

A music or video compilation's end action determines what happens after the last song is played.

Item	Description
Command	<p>Determines what happens after the last track plays.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Link: you can link to any menu, media file, and chapter point. Use the Destination, Destination chapter, Destination item, or Destination button controls to set the target. You can also use the Destination button control to choose the default selected button in the destination menu. • Stop: your disc will stop playing after the last song.
Destination	<p>When Link is selected in the Command drop-down list, choose the menu or media file that will be displayed.</p> <p>Note: If you want the user's remote control navigation to follow the same path as your end actions, set the media file's end action and the remote's Menu button to the same target destination. If no menu has been displayed, Most recent menu will display the first menu on the disc.</p>
Destination chapter or Destination item	<p>When your end action links to a video, music/video compilation, or picture compilation, choose the specific chapter in the destination file that will be displayed.</p> <p>When your end action links to a menu, choose Start or Loop Point to indicate the point from which the menu will be played.</p>
Destination button	<p>When your end action links to a menu, you can choose the button you want to use as the default selected button in the destination menu.</p> <p>If you choose Default, the first button listed under the menu in the Project Overview window is used as the default.</p>
Set audio track	<p>Choose a setting from the drop-down list to choose which audio track will be played in a destination title. Choose No change to use the last-set track.</p> <p>Note: If you use the Set audio track control to change the audio track, the new track will be used when you navigate between titles unless another button action, end action, or user action (via the remote control) changes the track.</p>
Set subtitle track	<p>Choose a setting from the drop-down list to choose which subtitle track will be played in a destination title. Choose Off to turn subtitles off, or choose No change to use the last-set track.</p> <p>Note: If you use the Set subtitle track control to change the subtitle track, the new track will be used when you navigate between titles unless another button action, end action, or user action (via the remote control) changes the track.</p>
Set video angle	<p>Choose a setting from the drop-down list to choose which video angle will be played in a destination title. Choose No change to use the last-set track.</p> <p>Note: If you use the Set video angle control to change the video angle, the new angle will be used when you navigate between titles unless another button action, end action, or user action (via the remote control) changes the angle.</p>


Remote Buttons

For each music/video compilation, you can allow or suspend operation of individual buttons on the DVD or Blu-ray Disc remote control. Turning buttons on or off helps to ensure the viewer will see your project as you intended it.

If you have an animated menu, for example, turning off buttons will prevent the user from navigating away from the menu before it's finished playing.

To turn each button on or off, choose **On** or **Off** from the menu.

Note: When **Off** is selected from the menu, the button is not available.


Item	Description
Title play	Allows the user to press the Title button on the remote to skip to a specific video or music/video compilation.
Stop	Allows the user to press the Stop button on the remote to stop the disc.
Time/chapter search	Allows the user to press the Time button on the remote to skip to a specific play time or chapter.
Previous/up	Allows the user to press the Previous/Up button on the remote to navigate to the previous chapter or menu page.
Next	Allows the user to press the Next button on the remote to navigate to the next chapter or menu page.
Fast scan	Allows the user to press the Fwd button on the remote to seek forward through a video, music/video compilation, or picture compilation.
Backward scan	Allows the user to press the Rev button on the remote to seek backward through a video, music/video compilation, or picture compilation.
Top menu	Allows the user to press the Menu button on the remote to navigate to the top menu of the disc.
Menu	Allows the user to press the Menu button on the remote during playback. Click the + button to expand the Menu controls so you can define the behavior of the Menu button for a title. For more information, see End Action on page 85.
	 The Menu button is not supported for Blu-ray Disc projects.
Resume	Allows the user to press the Resume (Menu) button on the remote to resume playback of a title after exiting it by pressing the Menu button.
Button navigation	Allows the user to press the Up/Down/Left/Right buttons on the remote to navigate between menu buttons.
Pause	Allows the user to press the Pause button on the remote to temporarily suspend playback.
Audio track change	Allows the user to press the Audio button on the remote to choose which audio track is played. Note: Choose No Change to use the last-set track.
Subtitle track change	Allows the user to press the Subtitle button on the remote to choose which subtitle track is displayed. Note: Choose No Change to use the last-set track.
Video angle change	Allows the user to press the Angle button on the remote to choose which video track is played.
Video mode	Allows the user to press the Video Mode button on the remote to switch widescreen, letterboxed, and pan-and-scan presentation in a 16:9 video.

Slide

The Slide page of the Properties window displays the settings for the slide selected in the Compilation window.

Video


The **Video** control displays the path to the image or video file that will be used.

Select the control and click the  button to display a menu, where you can choose a file, view media properties, crop and adjust media settings, remove the current file, open the file in your specified graphics editor, or explore the file's containing folder on your drive. For more information, see [Cropping and adjusting video and graphics](#) on page 61.

Tip: You can also change the slide image by dragging a new image from the Explorer window to the **Video** box or to a song in the Compilation window.


Audio

The **Audio** control displays the path to the background audio file that will be used.

Select the control and click the  button to display a menu, where you can choose a file, view media properties, remove the current file, open the file in your specified graphics editor, or generate music using the Cinescore™ plug-in. For more information, see [Generating music with Cinescore](#) on page 123.


Tip: You can also change the audio by dragging a new audio file from the Explorer window to the **Audio** box or to a slide in the Compilation window.

Stretch type

Select the box, click the  button, and choose a setting from the drop-down list to indicate how the image will be scaled to fit the screen.

Item	Description
Letterbox	The image is displayed without scaling, and black letterboxing bars are added above and below or on the sides as needed.
Zoom to fit	The image is magnified to fill the screen.
Stretch to fit	The image is stretched to fill the screen. This may cause distortion in the image.

Orientation

To rotate the video for the selected song, select the box, click the  button, and choose a setting from the menu.



Alternatively, click the **Rotate Clockwise**  and **Rotate Counterclockwise**  buttons in the Compilation window.

Color Sets

You can choose color sets to choose which colors are used to adjust which color set is used to draw subtitle text. You can have four project-wide color sets that are available to every title in your project, and each title in your project can also have up to four custom color sets with four colors each. Each color set includes a fill color, outline/background color, anti-alias color, and transparent color. For more information, see [Using color sets](#) on page 60.

Chapter 6 Creating a Picture Compilation

You can use DVD Architect™ Pro software to create a picture compilation DVD or add a picture compilation to a menu in a menu-based project.

Note: Each title in a DVD project can have no more than 99 chapter markers. Each title in a Blu-ray Disc project can have no more than 999 chapter markers.

In a compilation with more pictures than chapter markers, you can navigate to the last chapter marker with the Next Chapter button on the remote control, and then use the Fast Forward button to navigate past the last chapter.

If you'd like to learn more about starting a project and locating media, please see [Getting Started](#) on page 25.



Tip: If you want the file name of your images to be automatically inserted on a slide, make sure the **Auto-Insert Slide Text** option is enabled on the **Options** menu before you add pictures to your compilation. If you do not want any text to appear on your slides, make sure this option is disabled before you add pictures to your compilation. If this option is enabled or disabled after you have started adding pictures, it only applies to the pictures added from that point.

Adding a picture compilation to a menu

If you want to add a picture compilation to a menu in an existing menu-based project, the process is easy.

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu from which you want to link to the picture compilation.
2. From the **Insert** menu, choose **Picture Compilation**. A button is added to the menu as a link to the compilation.



Click the **Insert Object**  button in the Project Overview window and then click the **Insert Picture Compilation** button .

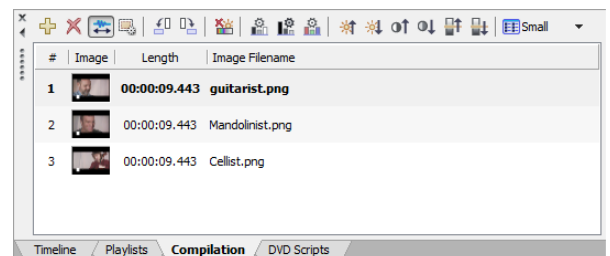
3. Double-click the compilation's button to begin assembling your compilation.

Adding and editing images

Inserting images

There are several ways to add images to your compilation:


- Use the Explorer window to locate and select image files and drag them to the Compilation window. You can select multiple files at once using the Shift key for consecutive files or the Ctrl key for nonconsecutive files. Files are added to the compilation list wherever you drag them.
- Use the Explorer window to locate image files. Double-click on a file to add it to the bottom of the list in the Compilation window.
- From the **Insert** menu, choose **Slide**. The Insert Slide dialog is displayed. Select a file and click the **Open** button. The image is inserted above the currently selected slide in the list.
- From the **Insert** menu, choose **Empty Slide**. An empty slide is inserted above the currently selected slide in the list.



Note: If you want the image file name automatically inserted on each slide, choose **Auto-Insert Slide Text** from the **Options** menu. Otherwise, you can manually add the text to each slide. For more information, see [Adding and editing text](#) on page 93.

Replacing an image

There are several ways to replace a slide image:

- Select a slide in the Compilation window. From the **Edit** menu, choose **Slide Image** and then choose **Set**. The Set Image dialog is displayed. Select a new image and click the **Open** button. The image is replaced with your new selection.
- Right-click a slide in the list and choose **Set Image** from the shortcut menu. The Set Image dialog is displayed. Select a new image and click the **Open** button. The image is replaced with your new selection.
- Drag a file from the Explorer window onto an existing slide in the compilation. The image is replaced with the dragged file.
- On the Picture Compilation Properties pane, click the **Slide** button. Click **Image**, click the  button, and choose **Replace** from the menu. The Open Media dialog is displayed. Select a new image and click the **Open** button. The image is replaced with your new selection.

Generating slideshow animation

If you want to spice up a picture compilation, you can add animation to your static images. For example, you could pan across an image or zoom in to simulate camera motion.



Important: *Generated animation is created by creating a crop keyframe at the beginning and end of each picture. Any cropping applied via the Crop and Adjust dialog will be overwritten when you generate slideshow animation. For more information, see [Crop and video effects keyframes](#) on page 64.*

1. Double-click a picture compilation in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the picture compilation you want to edit. *For more information, see [Project Overview window \(Ctrl+Alt+1\)](#) on page 14.*
2. In the Compilation window, select the pictures you want to animate, or press Ctrl+A to generate animation for all pictures. *For more information, see [Compilation window \(Alt+7\)](#) on page 18.*


Tip: *Select a single image when you want to be able to control the specific type of animation that is used for that image. For example, what if you wanted to use pan or zoom animation throughout a picture compilation but wanted to be sure to use panning on a wide landscape image?*

Press Ctrl+A to select all images in the compilation. You can then use the Generate Slideshow Animation dialog to set up pan or zoom animation throughout the compilation.



Next, click the landscape image to select it (and remove the other images from the selection). You can now use the Generate Slideshow Animation dialog to set up panning animation for that image.

3. Click the **Generate Slideshow Animation** button  in the Compilation window. The Generate Slideshow Animation dialog is displayed.
4. Select the **Animation** box, click the  button, and choose the type of animation you want to create:



Setting	Description
Pan only	Crops the image and moves the crop rectangle across the picture to create the appearance of your still images moving across the screen. You can choose the direction and speed of the motion.
Zoom only	Crops the image and changes the size of the crop rectangle over time to zoom in or out. You can choose whether you want to zoom in, out, or both, and set the maximum zoom level.
Pan or zoom	Panning or zooming is applied to each picture.
Pan and zoom	Panning and zooming are applied to each picture




5. If you want to crop the image before applying animation, select the **Edge crop** box, click the  button, and drag the slider to set the percentage you want to offset the crop rectangle from the original image size.

- If you selected **Pan only**, **Pan or zoom**, or **Pan and zoom** in step 4, use the Panning controls to fine-tune the pan animation that will be applied to your images.

Control	Description
Direction	Select the box, click the  button, and choose a setting from the menu to set the direction for panning.
Speed	Select the box, click the  button, and drag the slider to set the panning speed.


- If you selected **Zoom only**, **Pan or zoom**, or **Pan and zoom** in step 4, use the Zooming controls to fine-tune the zoom animation that will be applied to your images.

Control	Description
Direction	Select the box, click the  button, and choose a setting from the menu to choose whether you want to zoom in, out, or alternate between images.
Maximum zoom	Select the box, click the  button, and drag the slider to set the maximum zoom level. If you use the Edge crop control to crop the image, the maximum zoom is based on the edge-cropped image.



- If you want the cropped images to match the aspect ratio of your DVD Architect Pro project, select the **Match output aspect** box, click the  button, and choose **Yes** from the menu. Forcing the crop rectangle to match the project aspect ratio prevents the likelihood of seeing black borders around your pictures.
- Click **OK** to close the dialog and generate the animation. A Crop and Adjust keyframe is created at the beginning and end of each slide to create animation.
- Click the **Preview** button  to preview your settings.
- If you need to change your settings, you can use either of the following procedures:
 - Click the **Generate Slideshow Animation** button  in the Compilation window and use the Generate Slideshow Animation dialog.
 - For even more control, use the keyframe controller in the Crop and Adjust dialog to adjust individual keyframes for each picture. With this method, you can control the exact position of the crop rectangle for precise control over the pan or zoom animation. *For more information, see [Crop and video effects keyframes](#) on page 64.*

Setting image stretching or scaling

You can use the tools at the top of the Compilation window to rotate an image or set the stretch type that will be used to scale the image.

- Select an image in the Compilation window.
- On the Picture Compilation Properties pane, click the **Slide** button.
- Click **Stretch type**, click the  button and choose one of the following stretch types:
 - Letterbox** — the image is displayed without scaling, and black letterboxing bars are added above and below or on the sides as needed.
 - Zoom to fit** — the image is magnified to fill the screen.
 - Stretch to fit** — the image is stretched to fill the screen. This may cause distortion in the image.


Rotating an image

- Double-click a picture compilation in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the picture compilation that you want to edit.
- Select an image in the Compilation window.
- Click the **Rotate counterclockwise**  or **Rotate clockwise**  button.

Adjusting brightness and contrast or editing the image


1. Double-click a picture compilation in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the picture compilation that you want to edit.
2. Select an image in the Compilation window.
3. Use the buttons at the top of the Compilation window to adjust the appearance. *For more information, see [Compilation window \(Alt+7\)](#) on page 18.*


-or-

On the Picture Compilation Properties pane, click the **Slide** button. Select **Video**, click the  button and choose **Crop and Adjust** (to display the Crop and Adjust dialog) or **Open in Graphics Editor** (to edit the image in an external image editor). *For more information, see [Cropping and adjusting video and graphics](#) on page 61.*

Setting display duration from the Picture Compilation Properties window


You can adjust the duration of a slide from the Picture Compilation Properties window.

1. Double-click a picture compilation in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the picture compilation that you want to edit.
2. Select an image (or multiple images) in the Compilation window.
3. On the Picture Compilation Properties pane, click the **Slide** button.
4. Click **Length** and type the length of time you want each slide to display or click the  button and drag the slider.

Note: *If you've added background audio and you want the length of your slideshow to match the length of your background audio, click the **Fit compilation to audio**  button. Based on the length of your audio, the length of time each slide is displayed is automatically adjusted.*

Setting display duration from the timeline

Another way to set the duration of slides is through the adjustment of markers on the timeline. This is especially helpful if you want to precisely match your pictures to audio.

1. Double-click a picture compilation in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the picture compilation you want to edit.
2. In the Timeline window, drag the marker tab  to a new position.

Note: *A marker is automatically inserted at the beginning of each slide.*

Inserting an empty slide

You can insert an empty slide anywhere in your project by choosing the **Empty Slide** option from the **Insert** menu. The empty slide is inserted above the currently selected slide in the Compilation window. Once you have inserted an empty slide, you can add text and/or graphics to it.

Adding and editing text







Adding text

You can add text to each slide of your compilation.


Note: If you want the image file name automatically inserted on each slide, choose **Auto-Insert Slide Text** from the **Options** menu.

1. In the Compilation window, select the slide to which you want to add text.
2. From the **Insert** menu, choose **Text**. A text box is added in the workspace.
3. Type your text in the text box.

Formatting text


1. Select the image containing the text you want to format.
2. If necessary, click the Selection tool  or sizing tool  in the editing toolbar to make it the active tool.
3. In the workspace, click the text box and use the text bar to edit your text properties:
 - Choose a font from the drop-down list to set the typeface for your text.
 - Choose a font size from the drop-down list. Choose **Auto** to have the text automatically adjust to fit the size of the text box.
 - Click the **Bold** , **Italic** , or **Shadow**  buttons to toggle your font effects as desired.
 - Set your text justification options as desired. For more information, see [Text bar \(Alt+2\)](#) on page 16.
 - Click the down arrow next to the color swatch button  to display the color picker, where you can set the red, green, blue, and alpha channels for your text.

Moving text

1. Select the image containing the text you want to move.
2. If necessary, click the selection tool  in the editing toolbar to make it the active tool.
3. In the workspace, drag the text box to the desired location, or click **Transformations** in the Properties window to type a new location for the text box in the **X position** and **Y position** boxes.

Tip: You can also use transformation keyframes to animate text in your project. For more information, see [Transformation keyframes](#) on page 68.



Deleting text

1. Select the image containing the text you want to delete.
2. If necessary, click the selection tool  in the editing toolbar to make it the active tool.
3. In the workspace, select the text box you want to delete.
4. From the **Edit** menu, choose **Delete**.

Inserting a graphic

You can insert any number of graphics to display on top of a selected slideshow image.


1. In the Compilation window, select the slide to which you want to add the graphic.
2. From the **Insert** menu, choose **Graphic**. The Insert Graphic dialog is displayed.
3. Locate and select the file you want to use.
4. Click the **OK** button.

- To reposition the graphic, click the Selection tool  on the editing toolbar and drag the graphic to the desired location, or click the **Transformations** button on the Graphics Properties pane to type a new location for the graphic box in the **X position** and **Y position** boxes.
- To resize the graphic, click the Sizing tool  on the editing toolbar and drag any of the handles to resize the graphic, or click the **Transformations** button on the Graphics Properties pane to type a new size for the graphic box in the **X size** and **Y size** boxes.



Tip: You can also use transformation keyframes to animate graphics in your project. For more information, see [Transformation keyframes](#) on page 68.

Inserting audio

You can select an audio file to play in the background while your compilation is being viewed.

- Drag an audio file to the workspace or to an audio track in the Timeline window.
- Click the **Fit compilation to audio**  button to automatically adjust the duration of all slides to match the length of the audio file. For more information, see [Audio tracks](#) on page 113.


Setting thumbnail display

You can set the size of the thumbnail displayed for the slides in the Compilation window. Click the  button to the right of the **Thumbnail Size** button  and choose **Small**, **Medium**, or **Large** to select the desired size.

Picture compilation properties


The Picture Compilation Properties pane in the Properties window allows you to adjust the end actions and remote control button behavior for the selected picture compilation.

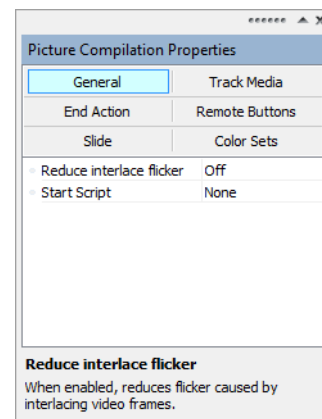
To edit the picture compilation's properties, perform the following steps:

- Double-click a picture compilation in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu you want to edit.
- Click the property button that you would like to edit.
- Click the specific property, click the  button, and choose a setting from the drop-down list.

General

Choose a setting from **Reduce interlace flicker** the drop-down list to turn flicker reduction on or off. Turn flicker reduction on when using still images that contain thin horizontal lines.

If you have already created at least one DVD script in your project, select the **Start Script** box, click the  button, and choose the script that will be played when the music/video compilation is accessed.



Note: None is the default setting.



Scripting is not available for Blu-ray Disc™ projects.

Track Media

The **Audio** control displays the path to the background audio file that will be used.

Note: If a picture compilation has multiple audio tracks, there will be a separate **Audio** control for each track.

Select a command from the menu to replace a file, view media properties, or remove the current file.

Tip: You can also change the audio by dragging a new audio file from the Explorer window to the **Audio** box or to a slide in the Compilation window.

End Action

Item	Description
Command	<p>Determines what happens after the last slide is displayed.</p> <p>Link - you can link to any menu, media file, and chapter point. Use the Destination, Destination chapter, Destination item, or Destination button controls to set the target. You can also use the Destination button control to choose the default selected button in the destination menu.</p> <p>Stop - your disc will stop playing after the last song.</p>
Destination	<p>When Link is selected in the Command drop-down list, choose the menu or media file that will be displayed.</p> <p>Note: If no menu has been displayed, Most recent menu will display the first menu on the disc.</p>
Destination chapter	<p>When your end action links to a video, music/video compilation, picture compilation, or playlist, choose the specific chapter in the destination file that will be displayed.</p>
Destination item	<p>When your end action links to a menu, choose Start or Loop Point to indicate the point from which the menu will be played. For more information about setting a menu loop point, see the General heading in the Menu Page Properties topic.</p>
Destination button	<p>When your end action links to a menu, you can choose the button you want to use as the default selected button in the destination menu.</p> <p>If you choose Default, the first button listed under the menu in the Project Overview window is used as the default.</p>
Set audio track	<p>Choose a setting from the drop-down list to choose which audio track will be played in a destination title. Choose No change to use the last-set track.</p> <p>Note: If you use the Set audio track control to change the audio track, the new track will be used when you navigate between titles unless another button action, end action, or user action (via the remote control) changes the track.</p>
Set subtitle track	<p>Choose a setting from the drop-down list to choose which subtitle track will be played in a destination title. Choose Off to turn subtitles off, or choose No change to use the last-set track.</p> <p>Note: If you use the Set subtitle track control to change the subtitle track, the new track will be used when you navigate between titles unless another button action, end action, or user action (via the remote control) changes the track.</p>
Set video angle	<p>Choose a setting from the drop-down list to choose which video angle will be played in a destination title. Choose No change to use the last-set track.</p> <p>Note: If you use the Set video angle control to change the video angle, the new angle will be used when you navigate between titles unless another button action, end action, or user action (via the remote control) changes the angle.</p>


Remote Buttons

For each picture compilation, you can allow or suspend operation of individual buttons on the DVD or Blu-ray Disc remote control. Turning buttons on or off helps to ensure the viewer will see your project as you intended it.

If you have an animated menu, for example, turning off buttons will prevent the user from navigating away from the menu before it's finished playing.

To turn each button on or off, choose **On** or **Off** from the menu.


Note: When **Off** is selected from the menu, the button is not available.

Item	Description
Title play	Allows the user to press the Title button on the remote to skip to a specific video or music/picture compilation.
Stop	Allows the user to press the Stop button on the remote to stop the disc.
Time/chapter search	Allows the user to press the Time button on the remote to skip to a specific play time or chapter.
Previous/up	Allows the user to press the Previous/Up button on the remote to navigate to the previous chapter or menu page.
Next	Allows the user to press the Next button on the remote to navigate to the next chapter or menu page.
Fast scan	Allows the user to press the Fwd button on the remote to seek forward through a video, music/video compilation, or picture compilation.
Backward scan	Allows the user to press the Rev button on the remote to seek backward through a video, music/video compilation, or picture compilation.
Top menu	Allows the user to press the Menu button on the remote to navigate to the top menu of the disc.
Menu	Allows the user to press the Menu button on the remote during playback. Click the + button to expand the Menu controls so you can define the behavior of the Menu button for a title. For more information, see End Action on page 95.
	 The Menu button is not supported for Blu-ray Disc projects.
Resume	Allows the user to press the Resume (Menu) button on the remote to resume playback of a title after exiting it by pressing the Menu button.
Button navigation	Allows the user to press the Up/Down/Left/Right buttons on the remote to navigate between menu buttons.
Pause	Allows the user to press the Pause button on the remote to temporarily suspend playback.
Audio track change	Allows the user to press the Audio button on the remote to choose which audio track is played. Note: Choose No Change to use the last-set track.
Subtitle track change	Allows the user to press the Subtitle button on the remote to choose which subtitle track is displayed. Note: Choose No Change to use the last-set track.
Video angle change	Allows the user to press the Angle button on the remote to choose which video track is played.
Video mode	Allows the user to press the Video Mode button on the remote to switch widescreen, letterboxed, and pan-and-scan presentation in a 16:9 video.

Slide

Slide Media

The **Image** control displays the path to the image that will be displayed for the selected slide.


Select **Image** and then click the  button to replace a file, view media properties, crop and adjust media settings, or remove the current file. For more information, see [Displaying the Crop and Adjust window](#) on page 61.

Stretch type

Choose an option from the drop-down list to determine how the image will be scaled.

Item	Description
Letterbox	The image is displayed without scaling, and black letterboxing bars are added above and below or on the sides as needed.
Zoom to fit	The image is magnified to fill the screen.
Stretch to fit	The image is stretched to fill the screen. This may cause distortion in the image.



Length

Change the duration of the selected slide by clicking the  button and dragging the slider or typing a value in the edit box.

Orientation

Choose an option from the drop-down list to rotate the slide image.



Alternatively, click the **Rotate Clockwise** button  and **Rotate Counterclockwise**  buttons in the Compilation window.

Color Sets

You can choose color sets to choose which colors are used to adjust which color set is used to draw subtitle text during the picture compilation. You can have four project-wide color sets that are available to every title in your project, and each title in your project can also have up to four custom color sets with four colors each. Each color set includes a fill color, outline/background color, anti-alias color, and transparent color. *For more information, see [Using color sets](#) on page 60.*

Chapter 7: Creating Playlists

A playlist contains a user-defined sequence of movies, chapter markers, music/video compilations, or picture compilations. A playlist can contain only titles that are part of the project, which are played from start to finish, and an end action determines what happens at the end of the playlist. Playlists do not increase the size of your project.

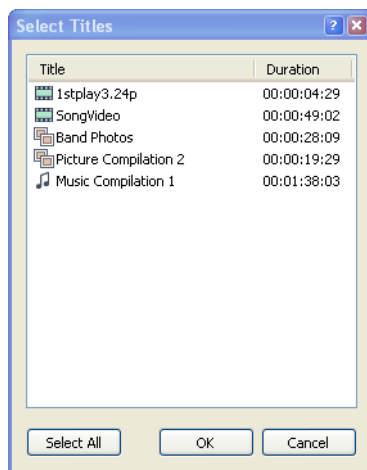
Notes:

- Each playlist in a DVD project can contain a maximum of 99 titles with 99 chapters in each title.
- Each playlist in a Blu-ray Disc™ project can contain a maximum of 999 titles with 999 chapters in each title.

Tip: If you want to create a series of videos that play sequentially, you can create a music/video compilation made up of video files. This sort of video compilation behaves much like a playlist, but it will be written to your disc as a single video title set. If you have a project with many short videos, this method can save you from re-rendering and combining media.

Adding a playlist to a menu

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu you want to edit.
2. From the **Insert** menu, choose **Playlist**. The Select Titles dialog is displayed.





3. In the Select Titles dialog, choose the titles that you want to include in your playlist, and then click **OK**. A button is added to the current menu as a link to the playlist.
4. To control which starting chapter, audio track, and subtitle track are played when each title is played, use the Playlist Properties pane. For more information, see [Playlist properties](#) on page 100.

Adding a playlist without a link


You have the ability to add a playlist to your project without adding a menu link. You can use this method to build your playlist, and then you can add buttons to your project when you are ready to link to the playlist.

1. Perform one of the following actions:

Option	Description
I	Click the Insert Playlist button  on the Project Overview window toolbar.
II	Click the Insert Playlist button  on the Playlists window toolbar.
III	Right-click in the Project Overview window and choose Insert Playlist.

2. In the Select Titles dialog, choose the titles that you want to include in your playlist, and then click **OK**.
3. To control which starting chapter, audio track, and subtitle track are played when each title is played, use the Playlist Properties. *For more information, see [Playlist properties](#) on page 100.*

Adding titles to a playlist

1. Double-click a playlist in the Project Overview window (or choose a playlist from the drop-down list at the top of the Playlists window) to open the playlist you want to edit.
2. Add titles to your playlist by completing the following steps:
 - a. Click the **Insert Playlist Items** button  in the Playlists window toolbar to display the Select Titles dialog.
 - b. Choose the titles that you want to include in your playlist.
 - c. Click **OK**. The titles are added to the end of your playlist.



You can also drag titles from the Project Overview window to the Playlists window.

3. To control which chapter, audio track, and subtitle track are played when each title is played, use the Playlist Properties. *For more information, see [Playlist properties](#) on page 100.*

Deleting titles from a playlist

1. In the Playlists window, select the titles that you want to delete.
2. From the **Edit** menu, choose **Delete**. The items are deleted from the playlist.

Rearranging titles in a playlist

You can quickly rearrange the titles in the Playlists window by selecting the title that you would like to move, dragging it and then dropping it to another position in the Playlists window.


Renaming a playlist

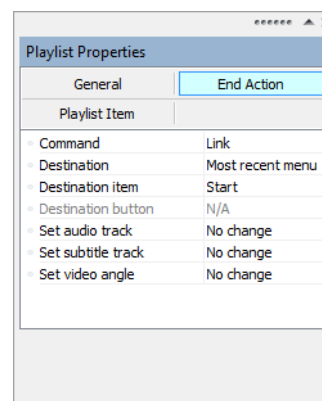
1. Right-click a playlist in the Project Overview window and choose **Rename** from the shortcut menu.
2. Type a new name in the edit box.
3. Press Enter.

Playlist properties

The Playlist Properties pane in the Properties window allows you to adjust settings for each item in a playlist, specify the playback order, or to set the end action for the selected playlist.

To edit the playlist's properties, perform the following steps:

1. Double-click a playlist in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the playlist you want to edit or choose a playlist from the drop-down list at the top of the Playlists window.
2. Select the playlist item that you would like to edit.
3. Click the **General**, **End Action**, or **Playlist Item** button.
4. Select the specific control, click the  button, and choose a setting from the drop-down list.



General

Item	Description
Play mode	Determines the order of play for items in your playlist: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Sequential: Plays the items in the order you selected in your playlist.• Random: Plays the items in your playlist in a random order.
Infinite	If you selected random playback, the Infinite control determines the number of items to play from your playlist <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Yes: Playback includes all items in your playlist, and continues until the user makes another selection.• No: Playback includes only the number of items you specify in the Count box, which DVD Architect Pro randomly selects from your playlist. Once playback of the specified number of items is complete, the disc returns to the destination specified in the End Action properties.

End Action

Item	Description
Command	Determines what happens after the last item in the playlist is played. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Link: you can link to any menu, media file, and chapter point. Use the Destination, Destination chapter, Destination item, or Destination button controls to set the target. You can also use the Destination button control to choose the default selected button in the destination menu.• Stop: your disc will stop playing after the last item.
Destination	When Link is selected in the Command drop-down list, choose the menu, title, or playlist that will be displayed. Note: <i>If no menu has been displayed, Most recent menu will display the first menu on the disc.</i>
Destination chapter	When your end action links to a video, music/video compilation, picture compilation, or playlist, choose the specific chapter in the destination file that will be displayed.
Destination item	When your end action links to a menu, choose Start or Loop Point to indicate the point from which the menu will be played.
Destination button	When your end action links to a menu, you can choose the button you want to use as the default selected button in the destination menu. If you choose Default , the first button listed under the menu in the Project Overview window is used as the default.
Set audio track	Choose a setting from the drop-down list to choose which audio track will be played in a destination title. Choose No change to use the last-set track. Note: <i>If you use the Set audio track control to change the audio track, the new track will be used when you navigate between titles unless another button action, end action, or user action (via the remote control) changes the track.</i>
Set subtitle track	Choose a setting from the drop-down list to choose which subtitle track will be played in a destination title. Choose Off to turn subtitles off, or choose No change to use the last-set track. Note: <i>If you use the Set subtitle track control to change the subtitle track, the new track will be used when you navigate between titles unless another button action, end action, or user action (via the remote control) changes the track.</i>
Set video angle	Choose a setting from the drop-down list to choose which video angle will be played in a destination title. Choose No change to use the last-set track. Note: <i>If you use the Set video angle control to change the video angle, the new angle will be used when you navigate between titles unless another button action, end action, or user action (via the remote control) changes the angle.</i>

Playlist Item

Item	Description
Start chapter	Choose a chapter from the drop-down list to choose where playback will begin when this item is played in the selected playlist.
Set audio track	Choose a setting from the drop-down list to choose which audio track will be played when this item is played in the selected playlist. Choose No change to use the last-set track.
Set subtitle track	Choose a setting from the drop-down list to choose which subtitle track will be played when this item is played in the selected playlist. Choose No change to use the last-set track.
Set video angle	Choose a setting from the drop-down list to choose which video angle will be played when this item is played in the selected playlist. Choose No change to use the last-set angle.

Chapter 8: Creating a Single-Movie Disc or Title


- You can use DVD Architect™ Pro software to create a single-movie DVD or Blu-ray Disc™ or add a single-movie title to a menu in a menu-based project.
- If you're creating a single-movie project, you already know how to start a project and locate your media (see [Getting Started](#) on page 25).

Adding a movie title to a menu

If you want to add a single-movie title to a menu in an existing menu-based project, the process is easy.

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu from which you want to link to the movie.
2. From the **Insert** menu, choose **Media**. The Insert Media dialog is displayed.





Click the **Insert Object**  button in the Project Overview window, and then click the **Insert Media** button .

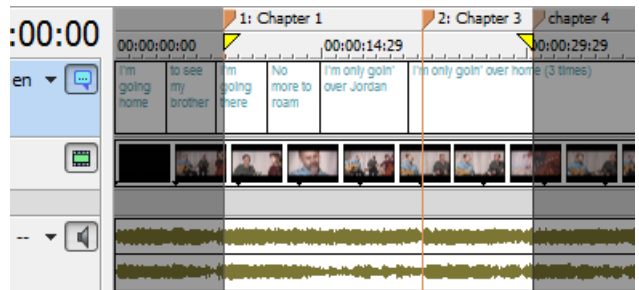
3. Locate and select the file you want to use.
4. Click the **OK** button. A button is added on the menu as a link to the video.
5. Double-click the movie's button in the workspace to open the video file.

After you've chosen your media file, you can use the Timeline window to set in and out points and add chapter markers.

Setting in and out points

You can set in and out points if you don't want to burn your entire video file. When preparing your project, the software will trim the video to include only the portion between these points.

1. Double-click a title in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the video.
2. In the Timeline window, click to position the cursor where you want the video to begin.
3. Click the **Set In Point** button . A yellow triangle is placed on the timeline to mark the in point. Chapter 1 represents the point at which playback will begin. When you change the in point, the first chapter marker will be updated to match the in point.
4. Click to position the cursor on the timeline where you want the video to end.
5. Click the **Set Out Point** button . A yellow triangle is placed on the timeline to mark the out point.



Working with markers

You can insert scene/chapter markers, chapter markers, and buttons-on-video markers in video files. You can also rename, move, delete, load, and save markers.


Notes:

- *Markers must be at least one second apart.*
- *A DVD project can contain a maximum of 99 chapters and 255 markers per title.*
- *A Blu-ray Disc™ project can contain a maximum of 999 chapters per title.*
- *In a music/video compilation, markers always occur at the beginning of the compilation and between items. These markers cannot be moved or deleted.*

Inserting scene/chapter markers

Using the Timeline window, you can place scene/chapter markers in your video file for viewers to use as navigation points. Scene/chapter markers allow you to move to certain portions of the video and begin playback.


You can also use scene/chapter markers to link to a point in a video using end actions or to automatically create scene selection menus using the **Insert > Scene Selection** command. *For more information, see [Continuing playback after playing the selected scene \(automatic scene selection menus\)](#) on page 56.*

1. Double-click a title in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the video.
2. In the Timeline window, click to position the cursor where you want to place the marker.
3. Click the down arrow next to the **Insert Scene/Chapter Marker** button  and choose **Insert Scene/Chapter Marker**.

Inserting chapter markers

Chapter markers are used to denote different sections of your project. You can place chapter markers in your video file for viewers to use as navigation points to skip through the project.

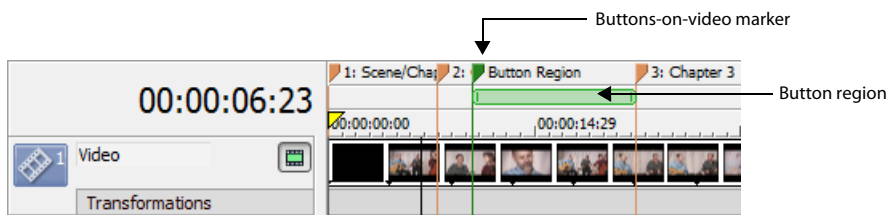
Chapter markers are ignored when you create scene selection menus using the **Insert > Scene Selection** command, but you can use chapter markers to manually create scene selection menus or link to a point in a video using actions. *For more information, see [Returning to the menu after playing the selected scene/chapter \(manual scene selection menus\)](#) on page 57.*


1. Double-click a title in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the video.
2. In the Timeline window, click to position the cursor where you want to place the marker.
3. Click the down arrow next to the **Insert Chapter Marker** button  and choose **Insert Chapter Marker**.

Inserting buttons-on-video markers

Adding buttons to a video allows you to add interactivity to your project. When you add buttons to a video, the button regions in the timeline must be placed between two markers. Unlike scene/chapter markers and chapter markers, buttons-on-video markers are ignored by the DVD or Blu-ray Disc remote control's previous/next chapter buttons.

When you add a button to a video, a button region is created in the Timeline window. Buttons-on-video markers can be moved so you can easily adjust the length of your button regions. *For more information, see [Adding buttons to videos](#) on page 109.*






1. Double-click a title in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the video.
2. In the Timeline window, click to position the cursor where you want to place the marker.
3. Click the down arrow next to the **Insert Buttons on Video Marker** button  and choose **Insert Buttons on Video Marker**. You can drag the edge of the button region to align with buttons-on-video markers.

Notes:

- *Markers must be at least one second apart.*
- *A 4:3 DVD project can contain a maximum of 36 buttons per title or menu.*
- *A 16:9 widescreen DVD project can contain a maximum of 18 buttons per title or menu.*
- *A Blu-ray Disc™ project can contain a maximum of 250 buttons per title or menu.*

Snapping markers to I-frames

In DVD projects, markers must occur at I-frames. If a marker does not occur at an I-frame, the  tag will appear. To snap the marker to the I-frame, drag the marker along the timeline to one of the I-frame reference points . When the marker has snapped to the I-frame, the  tag will clear from the marker. For more information, see [Moving markers on page 105](#).

Note: If a marker is not on an I-frame, you can recompress the video title to add an I-frame at that location. However, if you don't manually recompress the title, DVD Architect Pro will automatically move the marker to an I-frame. For more information, see [Optimizing your project on page 39](#).



This feature is not applicable to Blu-ray Disc projects—markers do not need to occur at I-frames in Blu-ray Disc projects.



Renaming markers

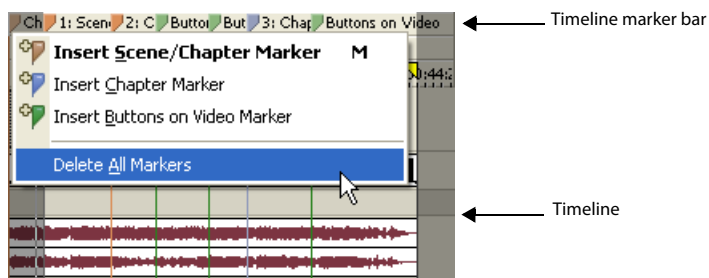
1. Right-click the scene/chapter marker, chapter marker, or buttons-on-video marker on the timeline and choose **Rename Marker** from the shortcut menu.
2. Type a new name in the edit box.
3. Press Enter.

Moving markers

To change the position of a scene/chapter marker, chapter marker, or buttons-on-video marker, drag the marker on the timeline to the new location.


Deleting markers

To delete a marker on the timeline, right-click the marker and choose **Delete Marker** from the shortcut menu. You can also right-click timeline's marker bar and choose **Delete All Markers** from the shortcut menu to clear all markers.




Note: DVD Architect Pro automatically inserts an initial scene/chapter marker in all video files. You cannot delete this marker.

Loading markers

Click the **Load Markers** button  to clear existing markers and reload any marker changes you made in the file with a video editor such as Vegas® software.

Saving markers

Use the **Save Markers** button  to save all markers to your media file. If you do not save your markers, the marker information is saved only in the project file.

Note: *DVD Architect Pro saves the marker location but not the marker type. When you load markers, all will be imported as Scene/Chapter markers.*


Media properties


The Media Properties pane in the Properties window adjusts the end actions and remote control button behavior for the selected media file.

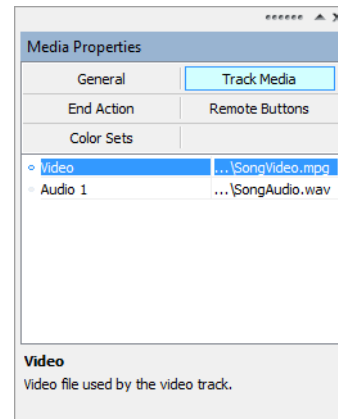
To edit media properties, perform the following steps:

1. If the window isn't already visible, choose **Properties** from the View menu.
2. Double-click a media file in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the media you want to edit.
3. Click a button at the top of the Properties window.

General

Select the **Reduce interlace flicker** box, click the  button, and choose a setting from the drop-down list to turn flicker reduction on or off. Turn flicker reduction on when using still images that contain thin horizontal lines.

If you have already created at least one DVD script in your project, select the **Start Script** box, click the  button, and choose the script that will be played when the media file is accessed.




Scripting is not available for Blu-ray Disc projects.

Track Media

You can easily change the video or audio files used for a movie or movie object by using the **Track Media** controls in the Media Properties pane of the Properties window.

Video

The **Video** control displays the path to the video file that will be used for the title.

Select **Video** and then click the  button to replace a file, view media properties, crop and adjust media settings, or remove the current file. *For more information, see [Displaying the Crop and Adjust window on page 61](#).*

Tip: *To change a file quickly, drag a file from the Explorer window to the **Video** box.*

Audio

The **Audio** control displays the path to the background audio file that will be used.

Note: If a title has multiple audio tracks, there will be a separate **Audio** control for each track.

Select **Audio** and then click the  button to replace a file, view media properties, remove the current file, generate music, or explore the containing folder. For more information, see [Generating music with Cinescore](#) on page 123.

Tip: You can also change the audio by dragging a new audio file from the Explorer window to the **Audio** box or to a slide in the Compilation window.

End Action

A media file's end action determines what happens after the media file ends.


Item	Description
Command	Determines what happens after the last track plays. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Link: you can link to any menu, media file, and chapter point. Use the Destination, Destination chapter, Destination item, or Destination button controls to set the target. You can also use the Destination button control to choose the default selected button in the destination menu.• Stop: your disc will stop playing.
Destination	When Link is selected in the Command drop-down list, choose the menu or media file that will be displayed. <p>Note: If no menu has been displayed, Most recent menu will display the first menu on the disc.</p>
Destination chapter or Destination item	When your end action links to a video, music/video compilation, or picture compilation, choose the specific chapter in the destination file that will be displayed. When your end action links to a menu, choose Start or Loop Point to indicate the point from which the menu will be played.
Destination button	When your end action links to a menu, you can choose the button you want to use as the default selected button in the destination menu. If you choose Default , the first button listed under the menu in the Project Overview window is used as the default.
Set audio track	Choose a setting from the drop-down list to choose which audio track will be played in a destination title. Choose No change to use the last-set track. <p>Note: If you use the Set audio track control to change the audio track, the new track will be used when you navigate between titles unless another button action, end action, or user action (via the remote control) changes the track.</p>
Set subtitle track	Choose a setting from the drop-down list to choose which subtitle track will be played in a destination title. Choose Off to turn subtitles off, or choose No change to use the last-set track. <p>Note: If you use the Set subtitle track control to change the subtitle track, the new track will be used when you navigate between titles unless another button action, end action, or user action (via the remote control) changes the track.</p>
Set video angle	Choose a setting from the drop-down list to choose which video angle will be played in a destination title. Choose No change to use the last-set track. <p>Note: If you use the Set video angle control to change the video angle, the new angle will be used when you navigate between titles unless another button action, end action, or user action (via the remote control) changes the angle.</p>

Remote Buttons

For each media file, you can allow or suspend operation of individual buttons on the DVD or Blu-ray Disc remote control. Turning buttons on or off helps to ensure the viewer will see your project as you intended it.

If you have an animated menu, for example, turning off buttons will prevent the user from navigating away from the menu before it's finished playing. To turn each button on or off, choose **On** or **Off** from the menu.

Note: When **Off** is selected from the menu, the button is not available.

Item	Description
Title play	Allows the user to press the Title button on the remote to skip to a specific video or music/video compilation.
Stop	Allows the user to press the Stop button on the remote to stop the disc.
Time/chapter search	Allows the user to press the Time button on the remote to skip to a specific play time or chapter.
Previous/up	Allows the user to press the Previous/Up button on the remote to navigate to the previous chapter or menu page.
Next	Allows the user to press the Next button on the remote to navigate to the next chapter or menu page.
Fast scan	Allows the user to press the Fwd button on the remote to seek forward through a video, music/video compilation, or picture compilation.
Backward scan	Allows the user to press the Rev button on the remote to seek backward through a video, music/video compilation, or picture compilation.
Top menu	Allows the user to press the Menu button on the remote to navigate to the top menu of the disc.
Menu	Allows the user to press the Menu button on the remote during playback. Click the + button to expand the Menu controls so you can define the behavior of the Menu button for a title. For more information, see End Action on page 107.
	 The Menu button is not supported for Blu-ray Disc projects.
Resume	Allows the user to press the Resume (Menu) button on the remote to resume playback of a title after exiting it by pressing the Menu button.
Button navigation	Allows the user to press the Up/Down/Left/Right buttons on the remote to navigate between menu buttons.
Pause	Allows the user to press the Pause button on the remote to temporarily suspend playback.
Audio track change	Allows the user to press the Audio button on the remote to choose which audio track is played. Note: Choose No Change to use the last-set track.
Subtitle track change	Allows the user to press the Subtitle button on the remote to choose which subtitle track is displayed. Note: Choose No Change to use the last-set track.
Video angle change	Allows the user to press the Angle button on the remote to choose which video track is played. Note: Choose No Change to use the last-set track.
Video mode	Allows the user to press the Video Mode button on the remote to switch widescreen, letterboxed, and pan-and-scan presentation in a 16:9 video.




Color sets

You can have four project-wide color sets that are available to every title in your project, and each title in your project can also have up to four custom color sets with four colors each. Each color set includes a fill color, outline/background color, anti-alias color, and transparent color. For more information, see [Using color sets](#) on page 60.

Adding buttons to videos

You can add buttons to a video title to make your projects more interactive. For example, add a button to a video title to take the viewer to a disc's outtakes or special features like those found on commercial discs.

Tip: You can also add buttons to picture and music/video compilations. To add a picture compilation to your project, see [Adding a picture compilation to a menu on page 89](#). To add a music/video compilation to your project, see [Adding a music/video compilation to a menu on page 81](#).

1. Double-click a video title in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open it.
2. In the Timeline window, click to position the cursor where you want to add the button to your project.
3. Add a button using any of the following methods:
 - From the **Insert** menu, choose **Empty Button** .
 - From the Timeline window, click **Insert Button** .
 - From the **Buttons** window, double-click a button to insert it into the workspace.
 - From the **Buttons** window, click a button and drag it into the workspace.
 - From the **Buttons** window toolbar, click **Insert Button** .

Notes:

- A 4:3 DVD project can contain a maximum of 36 buttons per title or menu.
- A 16:9 widescreen DVD project can contain a maximum of 18 buttons per title or menu.
- A Blu-ray project can contain a maximum of 250 buttons per title or menu.

4. You can use the Button Properties controls in the Properties window to edit the button image used and the button action. *For more information, see [Button properties on page 73](#).*
5. When you add a button to a video, a button region is created in the Timeline window. This button region indicates how long the button will be visible in your project. You can insert buttons-on-video markers in the Timeline window so you can easily adjust the length of your button regions. *For more information, see [Inserting buttons-on-video markers on page 104](#).*

Note: *Deleting all buttons in a button region will eliminate the entire button region.*

6. To add another button to a video, repeat steps 2-5, as needed. When you have multiple buttons in your video, you can edit the button order.

Editing button order for a video

From the Edit menu, choose **Button Order** to display the Button Order dialog, where you can set the order for buttons on the video title.

The #1 button is the default selected button when you navigate to a menu or video title unless you've used the **Destination Button** control on the Action or End Action page of the Properties window to specify a different destination button. *For information about editing buttons for menus, see [Editing button order for a menu](#) on page 70.*

When you use buttons on video, the button order determines which button is selected by default and when playback moves across button regions.

For example, imagine you have three buttons each in three button regions:

Button Region 1	
Button 1	Director's Interview: The making of this scene
Button 2	Cast Interview: The making of this scene
Button 3	Main Menu

Button Region 2	
Button 1	Cast Interview: The making of this scene
Button 2	Director's Interview: The making of this scene
Button 3	Main Menu

When the audience plays your disc, the same button number will be selected when playback passes from one button region to the next.

Notice that button 1 and button 2 are reversed in the two button regions. If button 2 is selected, the button highlight will switch from "Cast Interview: The making of this scene" to "Director's Interview: The making of this scene" when playback switches from button region 1 to button region 2.

Use the Button Order dialog to make sure your button order is consistent throughout your video.

1. Double-click a title in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the video.
2. In the Timeline window, click to position the cursor in the button region you want to edit.
3. From the Edit menu, choose **Button Order**. The Button Order dialog is displayed.

By default, the button order matches the order in which you added buttons to the video. The first button you add is the default button.

4. Select a button and click the **Move Up** or **Move Down** buttons to change the selected button's order.
5. Repeat step 4 as needed.
6. Click **OK** to close the Button Order dialog and save your changes.



Animating buttons with keyframes

You can make buttons fade or fly in to a menu by using keyframe animation. *For more information, see [Crop and video effects keyframes](#) on page 64.*


Moving a button into position on a menu

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu you want to edit. *For more information, see [Project Overview window \(Ctrl+Alt+1\)](#) on page 14.*
2. On the General page of the Menu Page Properties pane, verify that the menu length is long enough to accommodate the animation and that the menu loop point is set to the point where you want menu animation to end. *For more information, see [Editing menu page properties](#) on page 47.*
3. In the workspace, select the button you want to animate (if you can't see the button, click in the timeline to place the cursor after the loop point).

The Button Properties pane is displayed in the Properties window. *For more information, see [Button properties](#) on page 73.*

4. On the Transformations page in the Button Properties pane, click the **Show before loop point** box, click the  button, and choose **Yes** from the menu so you can animate the button before the loop point.
5. Add keyframes to move the button:
 - a. Double-click the Transformations keyframe bar below your video track. A keyframe is added to the Transformations keyframe bar.
 - b. Drag the keyframe to the beginning of the timeline, and click the keyframe to select it.
 - c. Using the keyframe tool  in the workspace, drag the button to the position where you want its motion to begin.

Tip: You can also use the Transformations page in the Button Properties pane to edit the button position.


- d. Double-click the Transformations keyframe bar to create the next keyframe.
 - e. Use the keyframe tool to set the button position for the selected keyframe.
 - f. Repeat steps d and e as needed to create your button motion.
6. Set the button's final position:
 - a. Position the last keyframe so it matches the menu's loop point marker in the Timeline window.
 - b. Use the keyframe tool  in the workspace to set the button's final position.





Preview your menu and edit keyframes as needed.

Fading a button in to make it appear gradually

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu you want to edit. *For more information, see [Project Overview window \(Ctrl+Alt+1\)](#) on page 14.*
2. On the General page of the Menu Page Properties pane, verify that the menu length is long enough to accommodate the animation and that the menu loop point is set to the point where you want menu animation to end. *For more information, see [Editing menu page properties](#) on page 47.*
3. In the workspace, select the button you want to animate (if you can't see the button, click in the timeline to place the cursor after the loop point).

The Button Properties pane is displayed in the Properties window. *For more information, see [Button properties](#) on page 73.*

4. On the Transformations page in the Button Properties pane, click the **Show before loop point** box, click the  button, and choose **Yes** from the menu so you can animate the button before the loop point.
5. Make the button transparent at the beginning of the menu:
 - a. Right-click the button in the workspace and choose **Crop and Adjust** from the shortcut menu. The Crop and Adjust dialog is displayed. *For more information, see [Displaying the Crop and Adjust window](#) on page 61.*
 - b. Click to position the cursor at the beginning of the timeline in the keyframe controller.

- c. Click the **Insert Keyframe** button .
 - d. Click the **Alpha** box in the Crop and Adjust Properties box and click the  button to display a slider.
 - e. Drag the **Alpha** slider to the left to make the button transparent.
6. Make the button opaque at the menu's loop point:
 - a. In the Timeline window, click the menu's loop point marker. The cursor in the Crop and Adjust Keyframe Controller is updated to match this position.
 - b. In the Crop and Adjust window, click the **Insert Keyframe** button .
 - c. Click the **Alpha** box in the Crop and Adjust Properties box and click the  button to display a slider.
 - d. Drag the **Alpha** slider to the right to make the button opaque.

During playback, your button is not visible when the menu starts, and it fades in gradually until the menu's loop point, when it is fully opaque.

Chapter 9 Adding Audio, Video, and Subtitles

You can add multiple audio, video, and subtitle tracks using DVD Architect™ Pro software. This will allow you to add support for multiple languages and multiple viewing angles. You can also add soundtracks to your projects using the Cinescore™ plug-in from Sony Creative Software Inc.




Audio tracks

You can add multiple audio tracks to videos and picture compilations to add support for multiple languages, audio description, and running commentaries.

When your disc is played, the DVD or Blu-ray Disc™ player will attempt to determine the appropriate default audio track. If the player cannot determine the correct language, the first track is used. If multiple tracks match the player's language setting — if you have an English dialogue track and an English commentary track, for example — the first track that matches the player's language is used. The viewer can choose which track is played during playback.

Adding audio tracks

You can add up to eight audio tracks for each title.

1. Double-click a title in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open it.
2. From the **View** menu, choose **Timeline** to display the Timeline window if it isn't already visible.
3. Click the **Insert Track** button  in the Timeline window and select the **Insert Audio Track** button . A blank audio track is added to the timeline. You can add an audio file by dragging it to the track or using the Media Properties pane in the Properties window.
4. Click the arrow next to the **Track Language** button  and choose a language to identify the track.
5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 as necessary to create the audio tracks for your project.

When setting up your project, it's a good practice to use the same track sequence for all videos, picture compilations, and music/video compilations. If you transition playback between titles, the disc will continue to play the same track number.

For example, assume the first title on your disc has the following track order:

Track	Language
1	English
2	French
3	Spanish

Now assume the second title on your disc has the following track order:

Track	Language
1	French
2	English
3	Spanish




If you're playing English dialogue in the first title, audio track 1 continues playing when you skip to the second title, so you'd hear French dialogue in the second title. Using the same track sequence for all titles will ensure consistency across your project. If necessary, insert blank audio tracks to maintain the track sequence so that the disc will continue to play the same track number when you transition between titles. However, a user could manually choose a blank audio track without realizing that it was intentionally left blank.

Note: Various brands and models of DVD players behave differently with blank audio tracks.

Replacing audio in a track

You can replace the audio in a track by dragging a new file from the Explorer window or Windows Explorer, or you can edit the controls on the **Track Media** page on the Media Properties pane of the Properties window. *For more information, see [Media properties](#) on page 106.*

Setting the audio track for timeline playback

Select the **Activate Track** button  in an audio track header in the Timeline window to determine which track is played when you click the **Play from In Point**  or **Play**  button in the Timeline window.

Changing audio track colors

1. Right-click the header and choose **Track Display Color** from the shortcut menu.
2. Choose a color from the submenu to set the selected track's color in the track list and the audio waveform in the timeline.

Note: Track color settings are saved with your project.

Video tracks

You can add multiple video tracks to videos to add support for multiple viewing angles. During playback, the user can press the **Angle** button on the DVD or Blu-ray Disc player remote control to change angles. Video track number 1 will play the title's main video. Any additional video tracks that you add will play when the **Angle** button on the remote control is pressed.



The maximum overall bit rate for titles with multiple video angles is lower than the maximum for single-angle titles. The maximum bit rates in each type of project (DVD or Blu-ray Disc) for the number of video angles in a title is listed below:

DVD project		Blu-ray project on DVD media		Blu-ray project on Blu-ray Media	
Number of Angles	Maximum bit rate (Mbps)	Number of Angles	Maximum bit rate (Mbps)	Number of Angles	Maximum bit rate (Mbps)
1	9.8	1	28	1	48
2-6	8	2	17	2	30
7-9	7.5	3-4	14	3-4	24
		5-6	11	5-6	20
		7-8	10	7-8	18
		9	9	9	16

Warning: Any title that contains multiple video tracks will be recompressed when you prepare your project so the main video and the alternate angles can be combined into a new video file. To avoid recompression artifacts (and unnecessary processing time), use AVI files for your multiangle video titles.

Adding video tracks

You can add up to eight video tracks for each title.

1. Double-click a title in the Project Overview window (or double-click a button on a menu in the workspace) to open it.
2. From the **View** menu, choose **Timeline** to display the Timeline window if it isn't already visible.
3. Click the **Insert Track** button  and select the **Insert Video Track** button  in the Timeline window. A blank video track is added to the timeline.

Note: You can add a video file by dragging it to the track or using the Media Properties pane in the Properties window.

Adding video to tracks


Unlike a standard video track, additional video tracks can contain multiple events from different media files and you can trim the ends of the events.

1. Drag a video from the Explorer window to a track in the Timeline window. A video event is created where you drop the file.






Alternatively, click the **Insert Video Event** button  in the Timeline window and browse to the file that you want to add.

2. Drag either end of an event to trim its length as needed.
3. Drag the event to position it on the timeline.

Note: If the **Auto Ripple** button  is selected, video events that occur later in the same track move automatically. When the **Auto Ripple** button is not selected, only the video event you drag will move; the positions of all existing video events are preserved.

Setting the video track for timeline playback

Select the **Activate Track** button  in the track header in the Timeline window to determine which track is played when you click the **Play from In Point**  or **Play**  button in the Timeline window.

Changing video track colors

1. Right-click the header and choose **Track Display Color** from the shortcut menu.
2. Choose a color from the submenu to set the selected track's color in the track list and the video waveform in the timeline.

Note: Track color settings are saved with your project.

Video event properties

The Media and Event Properties pane in the Properties window allows you to adjust the color settings and cropping for the events on the additional video tracks.

To edit the video event's properties, perform the following steps:

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu you want to edit.
2. Select an alternate video event in the Timeline window.
3. Click the **Event Media** property button.

Video

The **Video** control displays the path to the video file that will be used.

Select a command from the menu to view media properties or crop and adjust media settings.



Subtitles


Subtitles display on-screen text during videos, picture compilations, and music/video compilations. Subtitles are intended to be used as various text translations of audio dialogue. By adding multiple subtitle tracks, you can support multiple languages.

When your disc is played, the DVD or Blu-ray Disc player will attempt to determine the appropriate default subtitle track. If the player cannot determine the correct language, the first track is used. If multiple tracks match the player's language setting — if you have an English dialogue track and an English commentary track, for example — the first track that matches the player's language is used. The viewer can choose which subtitle track is displayed during playback.

Each set of subtitles is added as a separate track in the timeline. You can add up to 32 subtitle tracks for each title (16 tracks for widescreen assets).

Adding a subtitle track

1. Double-click a title in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the video.
2. From the **View** menu, choose **Timeline** to display the Timeline window.
3. Click the **Insert Track** button  and select the **Insert Subtitle Track** button  in the Timeline window. An empty subtitle track is added to the timeline above the video track.

- Click the arrow next to the **Track Language** button  and choose a language to identify the track.
- Repeat steps 3 and 4 as necessary to create the subtitle tracks for your project.

When setting up your project, it's a good practice to use the same track sequence for all videos, picture compilations, and music/video compilations. If you transition playback between titles, the disc will continue to play the same track number.

For example, assume the first title on your disc has the following track order:

Track	Language
1	English
2	French
3	Spanish

Now assume the second title on your disc has the following track order:

Track	Language
1	French
2	English
3	Spanish




If you're playing English dialogue in the first title, audio track 1 continues playing when you skip to the second title, so you'd hear French dialogue in the second title. Using the same track sequence for all titles will ensure consistency across your project.

If necessary, insert blank subtitle tracks to maintain the track sequence so that the disc will continue to play the same track number when you transition between titles. However, a user could manually choose a blank subtitle track without realizing that it was intentionally left blank.

Note: Various brands and models of DVD players behave differently with blank subtitle tracks.

Adding subtitle text

- Double-click a title in the Project Overview window (or double-click a button on a menu in the workspace) to open it.
- From the **View** menu, choose **Timeline** to display the Timeline window if it isn't already visible.
- Click to position the cursor in the timeline where you want to add the subtitle text.
- Create a subtitle event by doing one of the following actions:

Action	Description
Click the Activate Track button  on the track where you want to add subtitles and then choose Subtitle Text from the Insert menu	<p>An event is added to the track, and the text box in the workspace is made editable so you can change the text. If a subtitle event exists at the cursor position, another text box is added to the workspace within the current subtitle event.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the Auto Ripple button  is selected, subtitle events to the right of the cursor are shifted downstream to accommodate the new event. If the Auto Ripple button is not selected, a new event is created at the cursor position, and the positions of all existing events are preserved.
Click the Insert Subtitle Text Event button 	This will add a subtitle event at the cursor position in all selected tracks. The text box in the workspace is not made editable, but you can edit the text later.

- Repeat steps 3 and 4 to create subtitle text as needed through the project.

Creating a graphic subtitle

To create a graphic subtitle, open your image-editing software and create a new project. Your subtitle graphic should match the frame size in DVD Architect Pro. For example, if the frame resolution is 4:3 NTSC (720 pixels x 480 pixels) in DVD Architect Pro, the subtitle graphic should be 720 pixels x 480 pixels.

Note: If you use a graphic that does not match the frame size, adjust its position after importing it. For more information, see [Editing graphics properties](#) on page 53.

Now you can choose the type of highlight mapping for your project.



Highlight mapping	Background color	Text color
Transparency Graphics can have one layer (transparency with text) or two layers (a transparent background layer and text layer).	Transparent	Black
Intensity This option gives the text a more polished, smooth look. Note: Anti-alias colors are mapped to the four colors in the color set.	Black	White
Color channel This option allows you to use different colors simultaneously. To change the text color, see the text immediately following this table.	Black	Red, blue, or green

To change the text color when using the color channel option:


- In the Graphics Properties pane, select **Color Sets**.
- Click the **+** button next to any of the listed color sets.
- Choose the color you want to edit. *For more information, see [Editing a color set](#) on page 60.*

Color Set Mode	Corresponding Color
1: fill color	Red
2: anti-alias color	Green
3: outline/background color	Blue
4: transparent color	Transparent

Inserting a graphic subtitle

1. Double-click a title in the Project Overview window (or double-click a button on a menu in the workspace) to open it.
2. From the **View** menu, choose **Timeline** to display the Timeline window if it isn't already visible.
3. Click the **Insert Track** button  in the Timeline window and choose **Insert Subtitle Track** . An empty subtitle track is added to the timeline above the video track.
4. Click to position the cursor in the timeline where you want to add a subtitle text event.
5. From the **Insert** menu, choose **Graphic** to open the Insert Graphic dialog.
6. In the Insert Graphic dialog, browse to the .psd file (or other graphic file) and select **Open** to insert the subtitle graphic into the workspace.
7. Right-click the graphic in the workspace and choose **Make Graphic Actual Size** from the shortcut menu.
8. Click the **Media** button in the Graphics Properties pane and choose a setting from the **Highlight mapping** menu to indicate how to use the colors in the graphic. *For more information, see [Creating a graphic subtitle](#) on page 117.*
9. Select the subtitle event in the Timeline window and use the **Subtitle Event** page in the Media and Subtitle Properties pane to choose the color set for the event.

Importing subtitles from a file

1. Double-click a title in the Project Overview window (or double-click a button on a menu in the workspace) to open it.
2. From the **View** menu, choose **Timeline** to display the Timeline window if it isn't already visible.
3. From the **Insert** menu, choose **Subtitle Track**. A new subtitle track is added to the timeline.
4. Click the **Import Subtitles** button  in the Timeline window. The Import Subtitles dialog is displayed to allow you to browse to a .sub or .txt file.
5. When you click **Open**, the contents of the selected subtitle file are added to the track.

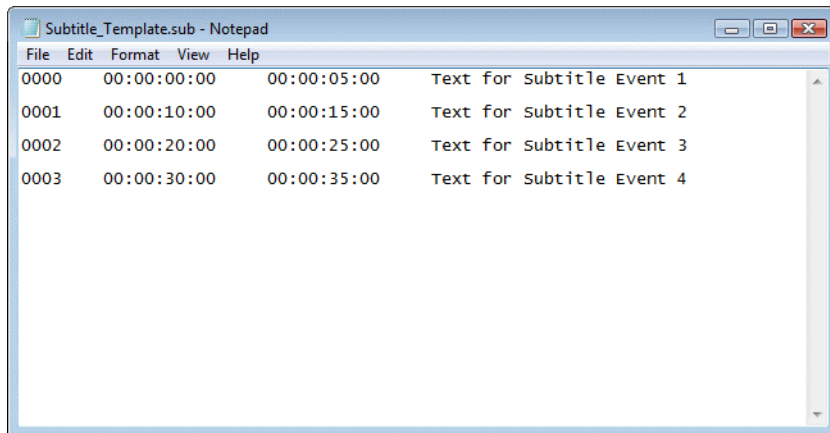
Each line in the file creates a subtitle event, and the events are spaced equally through the duration of the video. For example, the following text file would create three subtitle events:

```
No, 'tis not so deep as a well, nor so wide as a
church-door; but 'tis enough, 'twill serve: ask for
me to-morrow, and you shall find me a grave man.
```

6. You can then adjust the timing of the events to correspond with the spoken words in the audio track.


Creating a subtitle (.sub) file with timecode-based subtitle events

1. Open a new document in a text editor.
2. Create an entry for each subtitle event containing a subtitle number, timecode in position, timecode out position, and subtitle text:
 - a. Type a number to identify the subtitle event, and then press Tab.
 - b. Type the timecode position where you want the event to appear on screen and then press Tab.
 - c. Type the timecode position where you want the event to disappear from the screen and then press Tab.
 - d. Type the subtitle text you want to display on screen, and then press Enter.
3. Repeat step 2 for each subtitle event. When you're finished, you'll have a file that looks something like the following sample:




4. Save the text document with a .sub file extension.
5. You can now import the subtitles from your .sub file. *For more information, see [Importing subtitles from a file](#) on page 118.*

Exporting subtitles

1. Double-click a title in the Project Overview window (or double-click a button on a menu in the workspace) to open it.
2. From the **View** menu, choose **Timeline** to display the Timeline window if it isn't already visible.
3. Select a subtitle track in the Timeline window.
4. Click the **Export Subtitles** button  in the Timeline window. The Export Subtitles dialog is displayed to allow you to specify a file name and location for your file.

Creating subtitles from regions in a Vegas project

If you've used Vegas® software to create the video for your DVD Architect Pro project, you can use regions in the Vegas project to create subtitles. The length of the region determines the subtitle event length, and the region text is used as subtitle text.


1. Save the regions in your Vegas project to a text file.
 - a. Open your project in Vegas software.
 - b. Create regions in the project where the name of the region is the subtitle text you want to display.
 - c. Verify that no regions are overlapping.
 - d. From the **Tools** menu, choose **Scripting**, and then choose **Run Script** from the submenu. The Run Script dialog is displayed.
 - e. Run the Export Regions As Subtitles.js script to save your regions list as a text file.
2. Switch to the DVD Architect Pro window.
3. Double-click a title in the Project Overview window (or double-click a button on a menu in the workspace) to open it.
4. From the **View** menu, choose **Timeline** to display the Timeline window if it isn't already visible.
5. From the **Insert** menu, choose **Subtitle Track**. A new subtitle track is added to the timeline.
6. Click the **Import Subtitles** button  in the Timeline window. The Import Subtitles dialog is displayed.
7. In the Import Subtitles dialog, browse to the file you saved in step 1.
8. When you click **Open**, the contents of the selected subtitle file are added to the track.

Adjusting subtitle event timing

A subtitle event's position on the timeline determines when it is displayed in your project, and its duration determines how long it is displayed on screen.

Editing a single event's position

1. Double-click a title in the Project Overview window (or double-click a button on a menu in the workspace) to open it.
2. From the **View** menu, choose **Timeline** to display the Timeline window if it isn't already visible.
3. Drag an event in the timeline to change its position.


If the **Auto Ripple** button  is selected, subtitle events to the right of the event you drag will move with the event you drag.

If the **Auto Ripple** button is not selected, only the event you drag will move; the positions of all existing events are preserved.

Note: Events will snap to the cursor and to other event edges. If you want to trim an event to a specific time, position the cursor at that point on the timeline and drag your event edge to the cursor. If you want two subtitle events to be adjacent on the timeline, turn off Auto Ripple and drag an event edge until it snaps to the other event's edge. You can turn snapping on or off by choosing **Enable Snapping** from the **Options** menu.

Note: Events are forced to frame boundaries when the **Quantize to Frames** button  is selected in the Timeline window.

Editing a series of events

1. Select the first subtitle event you want to edit.
2. Position the cursor and click the **Play** button  to start playback in the timeline.
3. During playback, use the following shortcut keys to adjust your subtitle events:


Shortcut Key	Description
[Sets the start of the subtitle event at the cursor position.
]	Sets the end of the subtitle event at the cursor position and selects the next subtitle event. Hold Shift while pressing] to set the end of the subtitle event without selecting the next event.
\	Sets the end of the current subtitle event and the start of the next subtitle event at the cursor position.
T	Creates a subtitle event at the cursor position. Press T again before the cursor passes the end of the event to set the end of the event and create a new event


4. Repeat step 3 to set the position of each subsequent subtitle event.

Adjusting a subtitle event's length

A subtitle event's length on the timeline determines how long it is displayed on screen.


Note: Subtitle events in DVD projects cannot exceed 12 minutes when playing your project with a DVD player. If an event exceeds 12 minutes, the subtitle will be displayed on screen only for the first 12 minutes.

1. Double-click a title in the Project Overview window (or double-click a button on a menu in the workspace) to open it.
2. From the **View** menu, choose **Timeline** to display the Timeline window if it isn't already visible.
3. Hover over the edge of an event. Your cursor is displayed as a .
4. Drag an event edge to change its length.

If the **Auto Ripple** button  is selected, subtitle events to the right of the event you drag will move with the event you drag.

If the **Auto Ripple** button is not selected, only the event you drag will move; the positions of all existing events are preserved.

Note:

- Events will snap to the cursor and to other event edges. If you want to trim an event to a specific time, position the cursor at that point on the timeline and drag your event edge to the cursor. If you want two subtitle events to be adjacent on the timeline, turn off **Auto Ripple** and drag an event edge until it snaps to the other event's edge. You can turn snapping on or off by choosing **Enable Snapping** from the **Options** menu.
- Events are forced to frame boundaries when the **Quantize to Frames** button  is selected in the Timeline window.

Copying formatting across subtitle events

1. Double-click a title in the Project Overview window (or double-click a button on a menu in the workspace) to open it.
2. From the **View** menu, choose **Timeline** to display the Timeline window if it isn't already visible.
3. Select a subtitle event and edit it. If you want to select multiple events, hold Ctrl or Shift while clicking events. The event you want to edit should be the last event you click.
 - Use the **Transformations** page in the Properties pane or drag a text object in the workspace to change its position. *For more information, see [Transformations](#) on page 122.*
 - Use the text bar to change the subtitle's font, size, or justification. *For more information, see [Text bar \(Alt+2\)](#) on page 16.*



- Use the **Subtitle Event** page in the Properties window to change the color set used to display subtitle text. *For more information, see [Colors](#) on page 122.*
4. Right-click the event you edited and choose a command from the shortcut menu to indicate where you want to apply the formatting:
 - Choose **Apply Formatting to Selected Events** to apply the formatting and position of the text object you click to other selected subtitle events.
 - Choose **Apply Formatting to Selected Tracks** to apply the formatting and position of the text object you click to other selected subtitle events.

Note: *If subtitle events have multiple text boxes, formatting will be applied to the appropriate text boxes if possible based on object order. For example, if the event you edit has three text boxes with object order 1, 2, and 3, editing the text box with object order 2 will modify only text boxes with object order 2 on the selected events or active track.*

Setting a subtitle to display automatically

You can set an object to automatically display subtitles during DVD playback, regardless of the users settings.




Note: *To do this, subtitles for an object need to be created in your project. For more information, see [Adding a subtitle track](#) on page 115.*

1. In the workspace, select the object for which you have created subtitles.
2. In the Button Properties pane, click the **Action** button.
3. Select the **Set subtitle track** control, click the  button, and choose 1.
4. Double-click the object in the workspace to open it.
5. In the Media Properties pane, click the **Remote Buttons** button.
6. Select the **Subtitle track change** control, click the  button, and choose **Off**.

Editing a subtitle event's color set

You can use the Subtitles Event page in the Properties window to adjust which color set is used to draw subtitle text. You can adjust color sets independently for each subtitle track. *For more information about color sets, see [Colors](#) on page 122.*

Setting the subtitle track for timeline playback

Select the **Activate Track** button  in a subtitle track header in the Timeline window to determine which track is played when you click the **Play from In Point**  or **Play**  button in the Timeline window.

Changing subtitle track colors


1. Right-click the header and choose **Track Display Color** from the shortcut menu.
2. Choose a color from the submenu to set the selected track's color in the track list and the audio waveform in the timeline.

Note: *Track color settings are saved with your project.*

Subtitle properties

Subtitle properties allow you to adjust the text positions and color sets used to draw subtitle text.

To edit the subtitle's properties, perform the following steps:

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu you want to edit.
2. Select a subtitle event in the Timeline window or a text box in the workspace. The Properties window will display different controls depending on your current selection.
3. Click the specific control, click the  button, and choose a setting from the drop-down list.

Subtitle Event

Colors

Allows you to assign a color set to the selected subtitle events.

Note: *Subtitle events are drawn over the entire screen. If the color set's transparent color is not fully transparent, the screen will be tinted.*

Transformations

Allows you to adjust the subtitle text position when you select a subtitle text box in the workspace.

Item	Description
X position	Allows you to change the center of the selected text box's position.
Y position	
X size	Allows you to change the size of the selected text box.
Y size	
Maintain aspect ratio	Allows you to choose if you want the text to be stretched when you change the height or width of the text box.

Note: *The graphic or text event in the workspace must be selected to see these controls.*

Color Sets

Color sets determine which colors are used to display subtitles. You can have four project-wide color sets that are available to every menu page in your project, and each title in your project can also have up to four custom color sets with four colors each. Each color set includes a fill color, outline/background color, anti-alias color, and transparent color.




Use the Color Sets page to edit the color sets that will be available for the selected title, and then use the Subtitle Event page to choose which color sets are used for the current subtitle. *For more information, see [Using color sets](#) on page 60.*

Generating music with Cinescore



The Cinescore or Cinescore Studio plug-in allows you to automatically generate a soundtrack for use in your project. You can use Cinescore to create music for menus, picture compilations, and so on.

Note: For more information about purchasing Cinescore, please go to <http://www.sonycreativesoftware.com>.

Generate a new soundtrack

1. If the window isn't already visible, choose **Properties** from the View menu.
2. Double-click a menu or title in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu or title you want to edit.
3. To generate a new soundtrack, use one of the following methods:
 - From the Insert menu, choose **Generated Music**.
 - In the Timeline window, right-click an empty audio track and choose **Insert Generated Music** from the shortcut menu.
 - In the Timeline window, right-click an audio event and choose **Generate Music** from the submenu.
 - In the Timeline window, click the **Generate Music** button .
 - In the Background Media or Track Media pane in the Properties window, select the **Audio** box, click the  button and choose **Generate Music**.
4. Use the controls in the Cinescore plug-in to choose the settings for your generated music. For detailed information about using the Cinescore plug-in, click the  button in the top-right corner of the plug-in window.
5. Click **Finish** to close the Cinescore plug-in and add the generated music to your project.

Edit an existing soundtrack

1. To edit an existing Cinescore soundtrack, use one of the following methods:
 - Right-click the audio event and choose **Recreate Generated Music**.
 - In the Background Media or Track Media pane in the Properties window, select the **Audio** box, click the  button and choose **Recreate Generated Music**.
2. Use the controls in the Cinescore plug-in to edit the settings for your generated music. For detailed information about using the Cinescore plug-in, click the  button in the top-right corner of the plug-in window.
3. Click **Finish** to close the Cinescore plug-in and update the generated music in your project.

Chapter 10: Using Masks, Menus, and Themes

DVD Architect™ Pro software allows you to create custom masks, menus, and themes. This gives you ultimate control while creating your projects.

A mask determines which portion of an image will be visible. You can apply masks to button thumbnails, button frames, and image highlights.

Custom menus allow you to modify the appearance of your menus. You can create custom menus using your favorite graphics application and import the .psd file as a menu.

Themes take the guesswork out of creating your project. By choosing a theme, you can quickly create a snazzy new menu using predefined images and background music.

Creating custom masks

Masks determine which portion of an image will be visible. You can apply masks to button thumbnails, button frames, and image highlights.

Note: DVD Architect Pro software uses the color value of the red channel to determine which portions of an image are visible: white (R, G, B = 255) represents the portions of the thumbnail (or frame) that will be visible, black (R, G, B = 0) represents the portions that will be masked out, allowing the menu background to show through, and gray areas are partially visible.



Thumbnail masks

A thumbnail mask limits the portion of a thumbnail image that will be visible under a button. Themes can apply thumbnail masks automatically, or you can create your own.

Creating thumbnail masks

You can create your own masks using the image-editing application of your choice. Create the mask as an image the same size as your thumbnail image or as a layer in the thumbnail image. The masked area can be any shape and you can use any supported media file format as a mask.

Tip: You can use gradients to feather the edges of a masked image.

Sample	Description
	When an image that does not support transparency (such as BMP or JPG) is used as a mask, any pixel with a red value of 255 is transparent in the mask. In this example, the white area represents the portion of the thumbnail that will be visible.
	When an image that supports transparency (such as PNG or PSD) is used as a mask, transparent portions of the mask image represent portions of the thumbnail image that will be visible.

Thumbnail properties

When you select a button in the workspace, the Properties window displays information about the selected button. To see more information about the thumbnail image and its mask, click the **Media** button in the Button Properties pane and look under the **Thumbnail Properties** heading.

- The **Thumbnail Media** box displays the path to the current thumbnail file.
- The **Mask** box displays the path to the current mask file.

Tip: If you're using layered .psd files, you can choose which layer you want to use as the frame or mask image. Click the button to expand the **Thumbnail Media** or **Mask** heading, and choose the layer you want to use from the **Layer** drop-down list (or choose **Composited layer** to use the mixed layers).


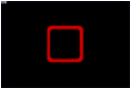

Frame masks

A frame mask limits the portion of a thumbnail frame image that will be visible around a button. Themes can apply frame masks automatically, or you can create your own.

Creating frame masks

You can create your own masks using the image-editing application of your choice. Create the mask as an image the same size as your frame image or as a layer in the frame image. The masked area can be any shape and you can use any supported media file format as a mask.

Tip: You can use gradients to feather the edges of a masked image.

Sample	Description
	When an image that does not support transparency (such as BMP or JPG) is used as a mask, any pixel with a red value of 255 is transparent in the mask. In these examples, the white and red areas represents the portion of the frame that will be visible.
	
	When an image that supports transparency (such as PNG or PSD) is used as a mask, transparent portions of the mask image represent portions of the frame image that will be visible.

Frame properties




When you select a button in the workspace, the Properties window displays information about the selected button. To see more information about the frame image and its mask, click the **Media** button in the Button Properties pane and look under the **Frame Properties** heading.

- The **Frame Media** box displays the path to the current frame file.
- The **Mask** box displays the path to the current mask file.


Tip: If you're using layered .psd files, you can choose which layer you want to use as the thumbnail or mask image. Click the **+** button to expand the **Frame Media** or **Mask** heading, and choose the layer you want to use from the **Layer** drop-down list (or choose **Composited layer** to use the mixed layers).



Highlight masks


A highlight mask determines where highlighting will be applied when a button is selected, activated, or inactive. A highlight mask can be applied in two different ways:

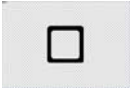

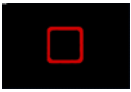
Option	Steps
Per button	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select a button. 2. In the Button Properties pane, click the Highlight button. 3. Select Style, click the  button, and choose a predefined highlighting style or choose Custom to use a custom mask file. <p>Creating a button highlight mask is just like creating a frame mask. For more information, see Creating frame masks on page 126.</p>
Per menu	<p>If you're designing your menus in a graphics program, you can adapt a your menu background files to create a mask file that you can apply to the menu.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select a menu in the workspace. 2. In the Menu Page Properties pane, click the Background Media button. 3. Select Highlight mask, click the  button, and choose the mask file that you want to use. 4. Select Highlight mask mapping, click the  button, and choose a control to indicate how transparency is determined from the mask.

Creating highlight masks

1. Using the menu background that you created, create a new layer or file for your highlight mask.
2. Apply the mask to your menu:
 - a. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu that you want edit.
 - b. In the Menu Page Properties pane, click the **Background Media** button.
 - c. Select **Highlight mask**, click the  button, and choose **Replace** from the submenu to browse to the file that you want to use.

If the mask is contained in a layer within the mask file, click the  button to the left of **Highlight mask**, select **Layer**, click the  button, and choose the layer you want to use.

- d. Select **Highlight mask mapping**, click the  button, and choose a setting to indicate how transparency is determined from the mask.

Mapping Mode	Description	Pixel Information
 Transparency	Maps the alpha channel of the menu highlight mask to the four colors used in the color set selected in the Selected button colors or Activated button colors drop-down list on the General page of the Menu Page Properties pane.	The most opaque pixels (those with alpha values of 192 to 255) are mapped to the color set's fill color (color 1), and the most transparent pixels (those with alpha values of 0 to 63) are mapped to the color set's transparent color (color 4).
 Intensity	Maps the average pixel intensity of the menu highlight mask to the four colors used in the color set selected in the Selected button colors , Activated button colors , or Inactive button colors drop-down list.	The lightest pixels (those with an average intensity of 192 to 255) are mapped to the color set's fill color (color 1), and the darkest pixels (those with an average intensity of 0 to 63) are mapped to the color set's transparent color (color 4).
 Color Channel	Maps color channels in the menu highlight mask to the four colors used in the color set selected in the Selected button colors or Activated button colors drop-down list.	A pixel containing any red channel component uses the color set's fill color (color 1), a pixel containing any green channel component uses the color set's anti-alias color (color 2), a pixel containing any blue component uses the color set's outline/background color (color 3), and a completely black pixel uses the color set's transparent color (color 4).

3. Choose the color sets that you want to use to highlight buttons on the menu when they are selected, activated, or inactive:
 - a. In the Menu Page Properties pane, click the **General** button.
 - b. Select **Selected button colors**, click the button, and choose the color set that will be used to highlight buttons on the menu when they are selected using the arrow buttons on the DVD or Blu-ray Disc remote control.
 - c. Select **Activated button colors**, click the button, and choose the color set that will be used to highlight the selected buttons on the menu when the user presses the Enter button on the remote control.
 - d. Select **Inactive button colors**, click the button, and choose the color set that will be used to highlight buttons on the menu when they are not selected.
4. Verify that your buttons do not have their own highlight mask settings:
 - a. Select all the buttons in the workspace.
 - b. In the Button Properties pane, click the **Highlight** button.
 - c. Select **Style**, click the button, and choose **Custom**.
 - d. Select **Mask**, click the button, and choose **None**.

Creating custom menus and buttons using layered graphics

For control over the appearance of your menus, you can create custom menus and buttons using your favorite graphics application and import the .psd file as a menu. *For more information, see [Adding a submenu](#) on page 45.*

Naming requirements for layers

The layer name of your .psd file will determine which layers will be used for each part of a menu. Layer names must use the following format: Type-ID-Subtype-Name. Refer to the following list for a detailed description of the format.

Type

Type indicates the contents of the layer.

Value	Description
background	Used for menu background images and menu highlight masks.
button	Used for button images and masks.

ID

The button ID is a numeric identifier that is used to represent related items. Refer to the following sections for layers used to create buttons in your menu:

- button-01-thumbnail
- button-01-thumbnailmask
- button-01-frame

The ID also determines a menu's button order: button-01 will be the first button and button-02 will be the second button.

Subtype

The subtype indicates the type of image contained in the layer.

Value	Description
thumbnail	A layer containing a thumbnail image for a menu or button. Note: <i>Thumbnail can be abbreviated as tmb.</i>
thumbnailmask	A layer containing a button's thumbnail mask. Note: <i>Thumbnail mask can be abbreviated as tmbmsk.</i>
highlight	A layer containing a highlight mask for a menu background or button. Note: <i>Highlight can be abbreviated as hlt.</i> By default, a highlight layer uses color channel mapping to determine transparency. If you want to specify the mapping mode, use the following subtypes: highlightrgb , highlightintensity (can be abbreviated as highlightint or hltint), or highlighttransparency (can be abbreviated as highlighttrans or hltrans).
frame	A layer containing a button frame. Note: <i>Frame can be abbreviated as frm.</i>
framemask	A layer containing a button's frame mask. Note: <i>Framemask can be abbreviated as frmmsk.</i>

Name

Name is an optional label for an object. Use **Up**, **Back**, **Prev**, and **Next** to identify layers that are used to create navigation buttons. For instance, a layer named `button-04-highlightintensity-back` would be used to define the highlight mask for the fourth button on a menu. Transparency is determined using intensity mapping, and the button will be imported as the **Back** button.

Creating a layered .psd menu

You can create a menu using a layered .psd file that contains the menu background, buttons, and related mask images on separate layers.

In general, try to avoid making major changes (such as adding, removing, or renaming layers) after you've created a menu using a .psd file. If you edit and save a menu's .psd file while working with your DVD Architect Pro project, the software will release the file when it loses focus and reload the .psd when focus is restored to the DVD Architect Pro window. The following actions may occur depending on the changes you make to the .psd file:

If	Then
You change the contents of a layer	The corresponding object's image will be updated when you restore focus to the DVD Architect Pro window.
You add a layer with an invalid name	The layer is ignored.
You add a layer	The layer is not detected until you choose Reapply Layout from File from the Edit menu.
You remove a layer	The corresponding object's image will be removed.
You rename a layer to an invalid name	The corresponding object's image will be removed.
You rename a layer to a valid name	The object corresponding to the previous layer name will be taken offline. The object associated with the new layer name is added when you choose Reapply Layout from File from the Edit menu.

1. In your image-editing application, start a new image. Your image should match the height of the output format frame size and the width should include compensation for the output format's pixel aspect ratio:

Output Format	Aspect Ratio	Menu Size
4:3 NTSC (720 x 480)	.9091	655 x 480
Widescreen NTSC (720 x 480)	1.2121	873 x 480
4:3 PAL (720 x 576)	1.0926	787 x 576
Widescreen PAL (720 x 576)	1.4568	1049 x 576
1280 x 720	1.0	1280 x 720
1440 x 1080	1.3333	1920 x 1080
1920 x 1080	1.0	1920 x 1080

2. Create layers for your menu background images:
 - a. If you would like to group background layers, create a layer set named background-01-group.
 - b. For the menu background, create a layer named background-01. Static titles, images, and other background elements should be merged into this layer.
 - c. For the menu's highlight mask, which is optional, create a layer named background-01-highlight.

If your .psd file will use button-specific highlight mask images, you can skip this layer.

3. Create layers for your button images:
 - a. If you would like to group button layers, create a layer set named button-01-group.
 - b. For the main button image, create a layer named button-01-thumbnail (if you are going to use the Media page in the Button Properties pane to assign a thumbnail, you can skip this layer).
 - c. For the button's mask image, which is optional, create a layer named button-01-thumbnailmask. The mask determines which part of the thumbnail will be visible inside the button.
 - d. For the button's frame image, which is optional, create a layer named button-01-frame. The frame image is displayed around the button.
 - e. For the frame's mask image, which is optional, create a layer named button-01-framemask. The frame mask determines which portion of the frame image will be visible.
 - f. For the button's highlight mask, which is optional, create a layer named button-01-highlight. The highlight mask determines where highlighting will be applied when a button is selected or activated.

If your .psd file will use a menu-specific highlight mask, you can skip this layer.

4. Repeat step 3 as needed, incrementing the ID for each button.
5. Create layers for navigation buttons as needed.

Note: *If you omit navigation button layers, empty buttons will be used.*

- a. If you would like to group navigation button layers, create a layer set named button-02-group.
- b. For the main button image, which is optional, create a layer named button-02-thumbnail-next (if you are going to use the Media page in the Button Properties pane to assign a thumbnail, you can skip this layer).

Appending "next" to the end of the layer name tells DVD Architect Pro software that this layer is used for a next navigation button. Your menu could also include button-03-thumbnail-up, button-02-thumbnail-back, or button-03-thumbnail-prev.
- c. For the button's mask image, which is optional, create a layer named button-02-thumbnailmask-next. The mask determines which part of the thumbnail will be visible inside the button.
- d. For the button's highlight mask, create a layer named button-02-thumbnailmask-next. The highlight mask determines where highlighting will be applied when a button is selected or activated.


If your .psd file will use a menu-specific highlight mask, you can skip this layer.





Creating custom menus and buttons using single-layer graphics

You can create custom menus using your favorite graphics application. If the application does not support layers, then refer to the steps outlined below.



1. Use your image-editing application to create your menu:
 - a. Start a new image. Your image should match the height of the output format frame size and the width should include compensation for the output format's pixel aspect ratio:

Output Format	Aspect Ratio	Menu Size
4:3 NTSC (720 x 480)	.9091	655 x 480
Widescreen NTSC (720 x 480)	1.2121	873 x 480
4:3 PAL (720 x 576)	1.0926	787 x 576
Widescreen PAL (720 x 576)	1.4568	1049 x 576
1280 x 720	1.0	1280 x 720
1440 x 1080	1.3333	1920 x 1080
1920 x 1080	1.0	1920 x 1080



- b. Include the background, buttons, and text that you want to display in a single layer.
 2. Create a highlight mask image to display where highlighting will be applied when a button is selected or activated. *For more information, see [Highlight masks](#) on page 127.*
 3. Add a menu to your project. *For more information, see [Adding a submenu](#) on page 45.*
 4. Remove the default text from the menu.
 5. Add your background image:
 - a. Click the **Background Media** button on the Menu Page Properties page.
 - b. Select **Video**, click the  button, and choose **Replace** from the menu to browse to your custom background image.


If the menu background is contained in a layer within the image, click the  button to the left of **Video**, select **Layer**, click the  button, and choose the layer you want to use.
 - c. Select **Stretch type**, click the  button, and choose **Stretch to Fit**.
6. Add buttons to the menu:
 - a. From the **Insert** menu, choose **Empty button**.
 - b. With the sizing tool  selected, click the new button's default text label and press **Delete**.
 - c. Using the sizing tool, drag the empty button rectangle and drop it over a button image in your menu background.
 - d. Drag the edges of the empty button with the sizing tool (or use the controls on the Transformations page of the Button Properties pane) to resize the empty button so the entire button image is contained within the empty button's rectangle.

If the button image extends beyond the empty button rectangle, button highlighting will be applied only to the portion of the button within the rectangle.
 - e. In the Button Properties pane, click the **Action** button and choose a menu or title from the **Destination** drop-down to set the button's target.




If the title you want to use as a destination isn't part of your project yet, you can drag a media file from the Explorer window to the root of the Project Overview window to add it to your project without creating a button in the current menu.
7. Repeat step 6 for each menu button.
8. Remove the default button highlighting:
 - a. Select all the buttons in the workspace.
 - b. In the Button Properties pane, click the **Highlight** button.
 - c. Select **Style**, click the  button, and choose **Custom**.
 - d. Select **Mask**, click the  button, and choose **None**.
9. Apply your menu highlight mask:
 - a. In the Menu Page Properties pane, click the **Background Media** button.

- b. Select **Highlight mask**, click the  button, and choose **Replace** from the submenu to browse to the file that you want to use.

If the mask is contained in a layer within the mask file, click the  button to the left of **Highlight mask**, select **Layer**, click the  button, and choose the layer you want to use.

- c. Select **Highlight mask mapping**, click the  button, and choose a setting to indicate how transparency is determined from the mask.

10. Choose the color sets that you want to use to highlight buttons on the menu when they are selected, activated, or inactive:


- a. In the Menu Page Properties pane, click the **General** button.
- b. Select **Selected button colors**, click the  button, and choose the color set that will be used to highlight buttons on the menu when they are selected using the arrow buttons on the DVD or Blu-ray Disc remote control.
- c. Select **Activated button colors**, click the  button, and choose the color set that will be used to highlight the selected buttons on the menu when the user presses the Enter button on the remote control.
- d. Select **Inactive button colors**, click the  button, and choose the color set that will be used to highlight buttons on the menu when they are not selected.

Working with themes

A theme is a style sheet for a menu page. Each theme will include all pertinent information about the menu, including layout parameters (for example, button sizes, positioning, and spacing), font and text parameters, and graphics and audio information.

Applying themes


You can apply a theme to an entire project when you start the project, or you can apply themes to specific menu pages as you work. You use the **Themes** window at the bottom of the workspace to select and apply the themes. Once you apply a theme to a menu, the properties of the menu immediately change to those defined in the theme.

Note: To undo the application of a theme, click the **Undo** button .

Several themes are included for you to use in your projects. You can also create your own themes by editing an existing theme.

Choosing a theme

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu you want to edit.
2. Double-click a theme in the **Themes** window to apply it to the selected menu.

Note: You can also apply a theme by dragging it from the Themes window to the workspace or by selecting the theme and clicking the **Apply Theme** button .

Applying a theme's alignment to menu objects

You can automatically align menu objects when adding media to a menu.

Select the **Double-clicking files in the Explorer reapplies theme layout** check box on the **General** tab of the Preferences dialog if you want to automatically realign objects according to the current theme when you double-click media files in the Explorer. When you double-click a file, the new file is added, and the objects are realigned on the menu.


When the check box is cleared, the media files are added to the menu and existing object positions are preserved.

From the **Edit** menu, choose **Reapply Theme Layout** to realign objects at any time.

Deleting a theme

1. In the Themes window, select the theme that you would like to delete.

Note: *Default DVD Architect Pro themes or themes used in your project cannot be deleted.*

2. Click the **Delete Theme** button . A warning dialog is displayed asking you to confirm your theme deletion.
3. Click the **Yes** button to continue.

Creating custom themes

To create your own theme, you'll need an understanding of XML.

Themes are installed into a folder at C:\Documents and Settings\Your Username\Application Data\Sony\DVD Architect\5.0\Themes (C:\Users\Your Username\AppData\Roaming\Sony\DVD Architect Pro\5.0\Themes in Windows Vista™). Each theme is saved as a .thm file, which is essentially a .zip file that contains the theme's XML file and media.

Note: *In previous versions of DVD Architect Pro, themes were installed in a subfolder below the program folder. However, not all users could access the Program Files folder and the theme information. With the current folder location, if two or more people are using DVD Architect Pro from the same computer the theme information will be duplicated.*

The easiest way to create your own themes is to work on a copy of an existing theme.

1. Create a copy of the theme you want to modify and rename the file.
2. Open the .thm file in a program such as WinZip® and extract the files to a working folder.
3. Edit the theme's files as necessary:
 - You must change the <NAME> tag in the <THEME-INFORMATION> section to a unique name for the theme. Otherwise, your theme will not be detected.
 - Change the <AUTHOR>, <COPYRIGHT>, and <ABOUT> tags as well with your own information.
 - The default.xml file contains all information about the layout, including button positioning/spacing, font, text, graphics, and audio information. Do not rename this file. Check all tags and references in this file prior to saving, because any errors or mistakes will cause your theme to go undetected.
 - The media files in the theme are used for button and menu graphics, backgrounds, and audio. You can use any file format that DVD Architect Pro software supports, including .bmp, .png, .jpg, .gif, .avi, and .wav.
4. Resave the .zip file, renaming it to a .thm file, in the themes subfolder below the program folder. The new theme will be detected the next time you start the program and displayed in the **Themes** tab.

Warning: *If there are any mistakes or missing files referenced in the default.xml file, the theme will not load.*

Exporting menu as a theme

Have you created a menu that you would like to use over and over, but don't have time to create it time and time again? If your answer is yes, then we have a solution for you! You can now save the characteristics of a menu — such as background video or audio; button positions; sizes, shapes, and text fonts; and formatting — and add them to the Themes window for use at any time.

You can design your own menu or work on a copy of an existing menu and then export it as a theme.

Note: *The Buttons window will only display buttons that are defined in the grid theme type.*

Learning about positional and grid themes

When you export a menu as a theme using the simple view, the theme is exported as a positional theme. If you click the Advanced button, you can choose to export a grid-based theme, which gives you more control over the elements in the theme.

Refer to the following table for details about the data that each theme stores:

Theme Type		Theme Elements
Positional	Grid	
X	X	menu title (including text, color, position, size and text properties)
X	X	menu length
X	X	menu loop point
X	X	color set information for selected, activated, and inactive buttons
X	X	information about effects (cropping, brightness, contrast, and colorization for each saved graphical element)
X		text and graphics with the menu
X	X	information about buttons (size, position, image media, text, text properties, image and text layout)
	X	grid layout information
X	X	reduce interlace flicker setting
	X	background video, audio media, and highlight mask images and settings

Working with positional themes

Applying a positional theme

When applying a positional theme, items on the menu display exactly as defined in the current theme.

Applying a positional theme type will operate differently depending on whether or not buttons currently exist on the menu to which the theme is being applied.

- If no buttons exist, then all buttons from the theme are added, sized, and positioned as defined in the theme.
- If one or more buttons exist, then the buttons are updated based on their matches in the theme. However, if there are more buttons on the menu than the number defined in the theme, then the extra buttons on the menu will not change.

Text and graphical elements will be updated based on the theme:

- If more text or graphical elements exist on the menu than are defined in the theme, then extra elements will not be updated.
- If fewer text or graphical elements exist on the menu than are defined in the theme, then extra elements will be added.

Exporting as a positional theme

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu that you want to use to create your theme.
2. From the **File** menu, choose **Export Menu as Theme**. The Export Menu as Theme dialog is displayed.



Alternatively, in the workspace, right-click the menu and choose **Export Menu as Theme**.

3. In the **Name** box, type a name for the theme.

Note: Your theme name can have no more than 16 characters, including spaces.

4. Click the **Save** button. The Themes window is refreshed and your theme is added.

Working with grid themes

Applying a grid theme

When applying a grid them, existing buttons are repositioned and resized on the menu to display in a row and column format.

Note: No buttons are added or deleted.

Saving a grid theme

1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu that you want to use to create your theme.
2. From the **File** menu, choose **Export Menu as Theme**. The Export Menu as Theme dialog is displayed.



Alternatively, in the workspace, right-click the menu and choose **Export Menu as Theme**.

3. In the **Name** box, type a name for the theme.

Note: Your theme name can have no more than 16 characters, including spaces.

4. Click the **Advanced** button to modify theme specifications.
5. Select **Theme type**, click the button, and choose **Grid** from the drop-down list.
6. Edit your grid layout properties. *For more information, see [Modifying grid layout properties](#) on page 135.*
7. Click the **Save** button. The Themes window is refreshed and your theme is added.

Modifying grid layout properties

Select the specific property, click the button, and choose a setting from the drop-down list.

Tip: If you want to view changes in the workspace as you edit the properties, select the **Preview changes** check box.

Orientation

Specifies the button arrangement within the grid.

Item	Description
Horizontal	Arranges buttons horizontally. <div style="text-align: center;"> 1 2 3 4 5 6 </div>
Vertical	Arranges buttons vertically. <div style="text-align: center;"> 1 3 5 2 4 6 </div>

Horizontal alignment

Specifies the horizontal alignment for all buttons that are non-navigational in the menu.

Item	Description
Left	Horizontally aligns buttons to the left of the cells in the grid.
Center	Horizontally aligns buttons to the center of the cells in the grid.
Right	Horizontally aligns buttons to the right of the cells in the grid.

Vertical alignment

Specifies the vertical alignment for all buttons that are non-navigational in the menu.

Item	Description
Top	Vertically aligns buttons to the top of the cells in the grid.
Center	Vertically aligns buttons to the center of the cells in the grid.
Bottom	Vertically aligns buttons to the bottoms of the cells in the grid.


Margin

Allows you to specify the left, right, top and bottom margins of the grid for button placement.

Item Spacing

Allows you to specify the horizontal and vertical spacing between items.

Item, Next, Previous and Up Button

Click the  button to the left of the **Item Button**, **Next Button**, **Previous Button** and **Up Button** and edit the appropriate property settings.

Item	Description
Button rectangle	Allows you to specify the Left , Right , Top and Bottom position of the button.
Image rectangle	Allows you to specify the Left , Right , Top and Bottom position of the image related to the button.
Text rectangle	Allows you to specify the Left , Right , Top and Bottom position of the text related to the button.
Button style	Allows you to select how the buttons will display on your menus. Text only: Displays a text-only link. Image only: Displays only a graphical button. Text and image: Displays a graphical button with a text label.

Chapter 11 Using Scripting

Scripting in DVD Architect™ Pro gives you even more options for creativity when designing your project. Among other things, you can customize the play order of your disc, create simple games, and add navigation clues. The scripting feature in DVD Architect Pro is based on the DVD-Video specification.

Note: Your project can contain up to 4,095 scripts.



Scripting is not available for Blu-ray Disc™ projects.

The following are some examples of what you can do with scripting in DVD Architect Pro:

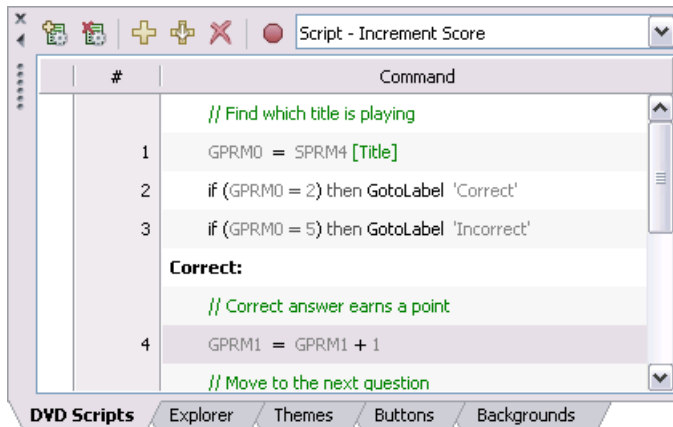
- Create a quiz-style game that keeps score based on the user's selections and customizes the result based on the score.
- Play random videos.
- Choose menus or videos to play based on the DVD player's language, parental management, and other settings.
- Require a passcode to “unlock” the DVD for playback.

Scripts have two main functions for DVD playback: jumping to a new location (such as a track or menu) or playing a different stream (audio, video, or subtitle). You can assign a script to almost anything in your project that supports scripts, such as menus, buttons, and end actions.

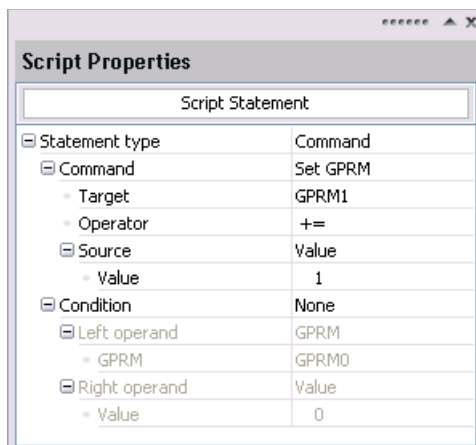
Each script can contain any combination of three statement types: commands, labels, or comments.

- *Commands* execute an action for a step in your script. Commands can utilize the standard capabilities in most DVD players, allowing you to further expand and customize your options for DVD playback. These DVD player functions are accessed by the script command using the player's General Purpose Register Memories (GPRMs) and System Parameter Register Memories (SPRMs).
- *Labels* are used to mark sections of a script to which you want to link. You can link from one section of a script to another using your defined label.
- *Comments* are used within the script to help you identify and track the purpose of statements. Comments are ignored by the script.

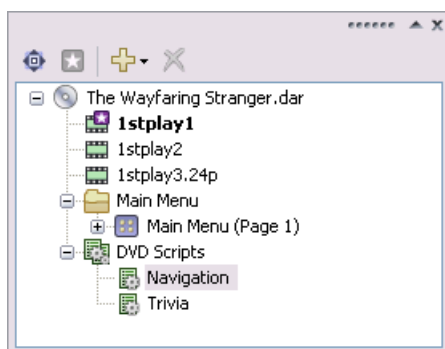
Scripts are created using the DVD Scripts window. . .



...and script statements are defined using the Script Properties window.



Once you've inserted a DVD script, it is displayed at the bottom of the Project Overview window:



Adding an existing script to a menu or title

To add an existing script to a menu or object, drag a script from the DVD Scripts heading in the Project Overview window to the item in the workspace.

Creating a script

If you want to add a script to a menu in an existing menu-based project, perform the following procedure.


1. Double-click a menu in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to open the menu from which you want to link to the script.
2. From the **Insert** menu, choose **Script**. A button is added to the menu as a link to the script.




Click the **Insert Object**  button in the Project Overview window and then click **Insert Script** button .

3. Use the DVD Scripts window to rearrange, add, or delete statements in the script.


Inserting a statement in a script

1. Double-click a DVD script in the Project Overview window (or choose a script from the drop-down list at the top of the DVD Scripts window) to open the script you want to edit.
2. In the DVD Scripts window, click the line where you want to insert a statement.
3. Click **Insert Statement** . The new statement is inserted above the selected line.
4. Edit your statement in the Script Properties window. *For more information, see [Editing a script's statements in the Script Properties window](#) on page 139.*

Appending a statement to a script

1. Double-click a DVD script in the Project Overview window (or choose a script from the drop-down list at the top of the DVD Scripts window) to open the script you want to edit.
2. Click **Append Statement** . The new statement is appended to the end of your script.
3. Edit your statement in the Script Properties window. *For more information, see [Editing a script's statements in the Script Properties window](#) on page 139.*

Removing a statement from a script

1. Double-click a DVD script in the Project Overview window (or choose a script from the drop-down list at the top of the DVD Scripts window) to open the script you want to edit.
2. Select a statement in the DVD Scripts window.
3. Press Delete or click **Delete Statement** . The selected statement is removed from your script.

Rearranging statements in a script

1. Double-click a DVD script in the Project Overview window (or choose a script from the drop-down list at the top of the DVD Scripts window) to open the script you want to edit.
2. Drag statements in the DVD Scripts window up or down to change their order.

Editing a script's statements in the Script Properties window

You can use the Script Properties controls in the Properties window to adjust settings for each statement in your DVD script.

To edit a script's properties, perform the following actions:

1. If the window isn't already visible, choose Properties from the View menu.
2. Double-click a DVD script in the Project Overview window (or navigate in the workspace) to select the script you want to edit (or choose a script from the drop-down list at the top of the DVD Scripts window).
3. In the DVD Scripts window, click the statement you want to edit. The Script Properties display in the Properties window.

Editing a command

Commands statement types determine what happens at this step in the script. You can use commands to assign values or set links to a GPRM (General Purpose Register Memory), skip to other sections of the script, set the audio, video, and subtitle tracks, resume or stop playback, and more. Optionally, you can also set specific conditions that must be present for these commands to be executed.

To create a command statement, choose **Command** from the **Statement type** drop-down list. Choose the type of command from the **Command** drop-down list:

Command Type	Description
Nop	No operation is currently invoked in this command. This is the default setting for all commands. A Nop command is ignored by the script.
Link	Links to a title or menu on your project. When adding a link, you can use the Destination , Destination chapter , and Destination button controls to customize the link. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Destination: Choose the menu, title, playlist, or script that will be displayed.• Destination chapter: When your statement links to a video, music/video compilation, or playlist, choose the specific chapter that will be displayed.• Destination button: When your statement links to a menu, choose the button you want to use as the default selected button in the destination menu.
GotoLabel	Links to a label elsewhere in the current script. When the script is run, it will begin executing statements listed after the label. Choose a setting from the Label drop-down list to select the label to which you want to link. <i>For more information, see Editing a label on page 141..</i>
Set GPRM	Assigns a value or asset to a GPRM: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Target: Sets the GPRM you want to use for this asset (0-5).• Operator: Modifies the target's value. There are 11 operators from which to choose.• Source: Sets the source (SPRM, GPRM, value, or link, depending upon the operator you selected) for the command. Use the controls below to choose the SPRM or GPRM index, the numeric value, or the link destination. <i>For more information, see General Purpose Register Memories (GPRM) on page 143.</i>
Link GPRM	Links to the specified GPRM. For example, you can assign a GPRM to a link using the Set GPRM command, and then use the Link GPRM command to execute the link in your script.
SetMode GPRM	Sets the specified GPRM to either register or counter mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Target: Sets the GPRM you want to use for this command (0-5).• Mode: Sets the mode (counter or register) for the command.
SetStreams	Sets the audio or subtitle track or the video angle. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Set audio track: Choose a setting from the drop-down list to select which audio track will be played. Choose No change to use the last-set track.• Set subtitle track: Choose a setting from the drop-down list to select which subtitle track will be played. Choose No change to use the last-set track.• Set video angle: Choose a setting from the drop-down list to select which video track will be played. Choose No change to use the last-set track.
Resume	Resume playback at the specified destination. In the Destination drop-down list, choose the media file that will be accessed.
Stop	Stop playback. You can also specify that playback is stopped only if the specified conditions are met.

Next, you can set the conditions that must be present for the command to execute:

Item	Description
Condition	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None No conditions must be met; the command will always execute as specified in the Command drop-down list. • < Less than. The command will be executed if the specified GPRM is less than the specified right operand item. • <= Less than or equal. The command will be executed if the specified GPRM is less than or equal to the specified right operand item. • = Equal. The command will be executed if the specified GPRM is equal to the specified right operand item. • >= Greater than or equal. The command will be executed if the specified GPRM is greater than or equal to the specified right operand item. • > Greater. The command will be executed if the specified GPRM is greater than the specified right operand item. • != Not equal. The command will be executed if the specified GPRM is not equal to the specified right operand item. • & And. The script performs a bitwise AND comparison. If the result of the bitwise AND comparison is 0, then the condition is false and the command is not executed. If the result of the bitwise AND comparison is anything other than 0, then the condition is true and the command is executed.
Left operand	Choose the GPRM you want to use for this condition (0-5).
Right operand	Choose the right operand item you want to use for this condition: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SPRM: Choose the SPRM variable to compare to your specified GPRM in the left operand. • GPRM: Choose the GPRM to compare to your specified GPRM in the left operand. • Value: Choose the numeric value to compare to your specified GPRM in the left operand.

Editing a label

A label statement type inserts a label in the script. Labels can be used to mark sections of a script to which you want to link.

To create a label statement, choose **Label** from the **Statement type** drop-down list. In the **Label** box, type the text you want to display in the label.

Once you've set a label statement, you can create a **GoToLabel** command to link from one section of a script to another using your defined label, and the script will begin executing the statements after the label.

Notes:

- When you set a **GoToLabel** command, this label will display as an option in the **Label** control drop-down list.
- Label statements can only be used to link within a script; links from one script to a label in another script are not supported.

Editing a comment

The Comment statement type inserts a comment in the script. Comments are ignored by the script and not seen by the DVD viewer, but you can use them during the script building and testing process to organize your script or add information.

To insert a comment statement, choose **Comment** from the **Statement type** drop-down list. In the **Comment** box, type the text you want to display in the comment.

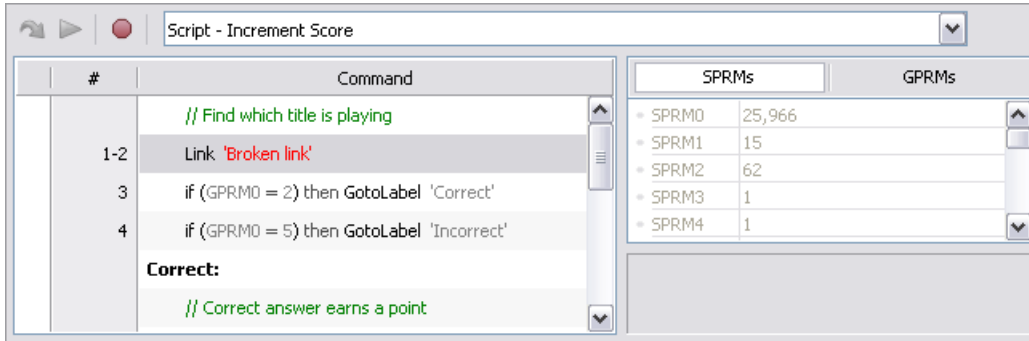
Testing a script

You can use the Script Debugger pane in the Preview window to test and debug your DVD scripts.




1. Click the drop-down arrow next to the **Preview** button  on the main toolbar choose a preview mode:

Preview Mode	Description
Preview Current	Starts the preview with the current page.
Preview Disc	Starts the preview at the beginning of your disc (including any introductory media).

- Once the Preview window is displayed, click the **DVD Script Debugger** button  to display the Script Debugger pane at the bottom of the Preview frame.



- Use the controls in the Script Debugger pane to test your script:

Item	Description
 Step Next	Click to skip to the next command line in the script. Press Shift+F5.
 Run	Click to run the script from the current breakpoint. Press F5.
 Toggle Breakpoint	Click to insert a breakpoint to the currently selected command(s) or label(s) in the script. During script debugging, playback will stop at the breakpoint until you resume by clicking the Run button. Press Ctrl+R.
Current script	Choose a script from the drop-down list to specify the script you want to display.
#/Command list	Displays the steps and commands in the script.
SPRMs/GPRMs	Click the SPRMs or GPRMs button to view the current settings for both memory registers.

Renaming a script

- Right-click a DVD script in the Project Overview window and choose **Rename** from the shortcut menu.
- Type a new name in the edit box.
- Press Enter.

Deleting a script

Right-click a DVD script in the Project Overview window and choose **Delete** from the shortcut menu.

Setting a DVD start script

A DVD start script is the script that will execute when the DVD is inserted in a DVD player. This script takes precedence over the item you've designated as your disc start item. *For more information, see [Setting the disc start item on page 32](#).*

To set your project start script, right-click a DVD script in the Project Overview window and choose **DVD Start Script** from the shortcut menu.

Tip: You can also set the DVD start script in the Disc Properties section of the Project Properties window. *For more information, see [Disc properties on page 32](#).*

General Purpose Register Memories (GPRM)

DVD scripts use General Purpose Register Memories (GPRM) to temporarily store values or assets assigned by a script command. For example, you can assign a GPRM's value to another GPRM's value, an SPRM's value, a number, or link to an asset in your project.

Since only six GPRMs (0-5) are available for storage, you should attempt to plan your script ahead of time and use the GPRMs wisely.

System Parameter Register Memories (SPRMs)

DVD players use variables, called System Parameter Register Memories (SPRMs), to specify the current settings for the player, such as the audio stream, camera angle, or parental level. You can use the power of scripting in DVD Architect Pro to access these variables during the navigation and playback of your project, allowing you to customize the viewing experience based on certain conditions.

The SPRMs are defined below:

SPRM	Description
0	Menu language code <i>For more information, see Language codes on page 144.</i>
1	Audio track number
2	Subtitle track number
3	Video angle number
4	Title number
5	Video title set (VTS) number
6	Title program chain number
7	Chapter number
8	Highlighted button number
9	Navigation timer
10	Navigation timer destination (which track to play when navigation timer in SPRM 9 expires)
11	Player audio mixing mode for karaoke
12	Country code for parental management
13	Parental management level
14	Player configuration for video
15	Player configuration for audio
16	Initial audio language code
17	Initial audio language code extension
18	Initial language
19	Initial subtitle language extension
20	Player region code <i>For more information, see Region codes on page 145.</i>
21	Reserved
22	Reserved
23	Reserved

Language codes

The following table lists the language codes supported by DVD Architect Pro software.

Use the number from the Value column when writing scripts.

Language	Code	Value
Abkhazian	ab	24930
Afar	aa	24929
Afrikaans	af	24934
Albanian	sq	29553
Amharic	am	24941
Arabic	ar	24946
Armenian	hy	26745
Assamese	as	24947
Aymara	ay	24953
Azerbaijani	az	24954
Bashkir	ba	25185
Basque	eu	25973
Bengali	bn	25198
Bhutani	dz	25722
Bihari	bh	25192
Bislama	bi	25193
Breton	br	25202
Bulgarian	bg	25191
Burmese	my	28025
Byelorussian	be	25189
Cambodian	km	27501
Catalan	ca	25441
Chinese	zh	31336
Corsican	co	25455
Croatian	hr	26738
Czech	cs	25459
Danish	da	25697
Dutch	nl	28268
English	en	25966
Esperanto	eo	25967
Estonian	et	25972
Faroese	fo	26223
Fiji	fj	26218
Finnish	fi	26217
French	fr	26226
Frisian	fy	26233
Galician	gl	26476
Georgian	ka	27489
German	de	25701
Greek	el	25964
Greenlandic	kl	27500
Guarani	gn	26478
Gujarati	gu	26485
Hausa	ha	26721
Hebrew	iw	26999

Language	Code	Value
Hindi	hi	26729
Hungarian	hu	26741
Icelandic	is	26995
Indonesian	in	26990
Interlingua	ia	26977
Interlingue	ie	26981
Inupiak	ik	26987
Irish	ga	26465
Italian	it	26996
Japanese	ja	27233
Javanese	jw	27255
Kannada	kn	27502
Kashmiri	ks	27507
Kazakh	kk	27499
Kinyarwanda	rw	29303
Kirghiz	ky	27513
Kirundi	rn	29294
Korean	ko	27503
Kurdish	ku	27509
Laothian	lo	27759
Latin	la	27745
Latvian	lv	27766
Lingala	ln	27758
Lithuanian	lt	27764
Macedonian	mk	28011
Malagasy	mg	28007
Malay	ms	28019
Malayalam	ml	28012
Maltese	mt	28020
Maori	mi	28009
Marathi	mr	28018
Moldavian	mo	28015
Mongolian	mn	28014
Nauru	na	28257
Nepali	ne	28261
Norwegian	no	28271
Occitan	oc	28515
Oriya	or	28530
Oromo	om	28525
Pashto	ps	28787
Persian	fa	26209
Polish	pl	28780
Portuguese	pt	28788
Punjabi	pa	28769
Quechua	qu	29045

Language	Code	Value
Rhaeto-Romance	rm	29293
Romanian	ro	29295
Russian	ru	29301
Samoan	sm	29549
Sangho	sg	29543
Sanskrit	sa	29537
Scots Gaelic	gd	26468
Serbian	sr	29554
Serbo-Croatian	sh	29544
Sesotho	st	29556
Setswana	tn	29806
Shona	sn	29550
Sindhi	sd	29540
Sinhalese	si	29545
Siswati	ss	29555
Slovak	sk	29547
Slovenian	sl	29548
Somali	so	29551
Spanish	es	25971
Sundanese	su	29557
Swahili	sw	29559
Swedish	sv	29558
Tagalog	tl	29804
Tajik	tg	29799
Tamil	ta	29793
Tatar	tt	29812
Telugu	te	29797
Thai	th	29800
Tigrinya	ti	29801
Tonga	to	29807
Tsonga	ts	29811
Turkish	tr	29810
Turkmen	tk	29803
Twi	tw	29815
Ukrainian	uk	30059
Urdu	ur	30066
Uzbek	uz	30074
Vietnamese	vi	30313
Volapuk	vo	30319
Welsh	cy	25465
Wolof	wo	30575
Xhosa	xh	30824
Yiddish	ji	27241
Yoruba	yo	31087
Zulu	zu	31349

Region codes

When you set a region code (1-8) for a project, a SPRM20 value is automatically inserted in the Script Debugger Pane.

Note: The SPRM20 value may not be changed manually.

If your project is encoded for multiple regions, the SPRM value allows your project player to read the bitmask and determine if the player is compatible with the disc. The region codes and the corresponding SPRM codes are below.

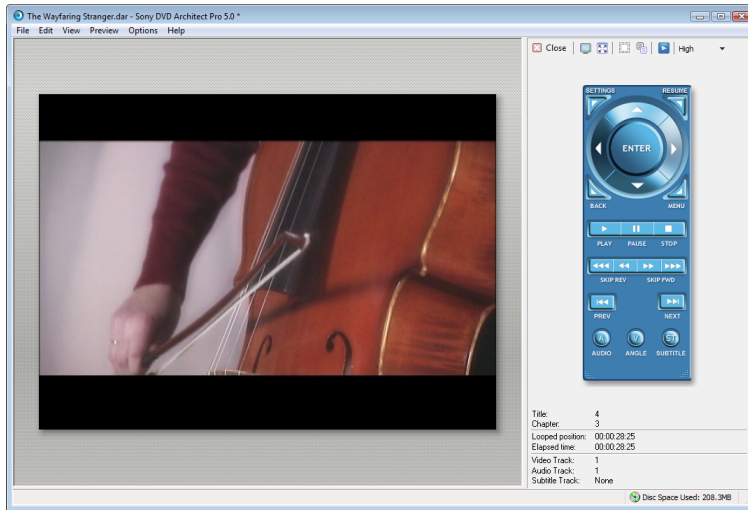
Region code	Region code description	SPRM20 value
1	North America	1
2	Japan, Europe, Middle East, South Africa, and Greenland	2
3	Southeast Asia and Hong Kong	4
4	Australia, New Zealand, Mexico, South America, Central America, the Pacific Islands, and the Caribbean	8
5	Northwest Asia (including Korea) and North Africa	16
6	China	32
7	Reserved	N/A
8	Airplanes (In-flight entertainment)	128

Chapter 12: Previewing Projects







You can preview your project before you begin the project-preparation process. The most common method for previewing is from within the DVD Architect™ Pro window. In this method, you can simulate how your project will look on a television screen and how it will perform in a DVD or Blu-ray Disc™ player. You can also preview on an external monitor or secondary Windows display. Both methods are covered in this chapter.

Preview window

The Preview window allows you to preview your DVD Architect Pro project on a simulated television screen with a virtual remote control.



Preview toolbar

 Close	Close Preview: Closes the preview window.		Copy to Clipboard: Allows you to copy to the clipboard.
	Preview on External Monitor: Allows you to preview your project on an external monitor device.		DVD Script Debugger: Allows you to debug your DVD script.
	Stretch Preview to Window: Stretches the video to the full viewing window.	High	Preview Quality: Allows you to change the preview quality.
	View Safe Areas: Allows you to view the safe areas lines.		

Previewing your project

To ensure that your project looks just the way you intended it, you can preview your DVD Architect Pro project on a simulated television screen with a virtual remote control.




1. Click the drop-down arrow next to the **Preview** button  on the main toolbar to choose a preview mode:

Preview Mode	Description
Preview Current	Starts the preview with the current page.
Preview Disc	Starts the preview at the beginning of your disc (including any introductory media).

The preview window is displayed.

2. Use the **Preview Quality** button to set your playback quality.


Note: *Decreasing the preview quality can allow you to preview your project when your computer cannot render the project in real time.*

3. If you want to verify whether any of your objects are outside the title and action safe areas, click the **View Safe Areas** button . The grids for the Title Safe and Action Safe areas display while your project is previewing. If you see clipping during the preview, you can make corrections in your project.
4. Use the buttons on the remote control to navigate and play your project.
5. Click the **Preview on External Monitor** button  if you want to send your project to the external monitor device specified on the **Video Device** tab of the **Preferences** dialog. *For more information, see [Previewing on an external video monitor](#) on page 148.*
6. To end the preview and return to the main window, click the **Close** button .

Previewing on an external video monitor

You can feed video directly from the DVD Architect Pro window to a television monitor or secondary Windows display. With this feature, you can free up valuable space in the DVD Architect Pro window by viewing a full-screen preview of your project on a different display, or you can make your final editing decisions on a broadcast monitor (which differs significantly from a computer monitor) before preparing or burning your project.

Note: *External monitor output is for verifying colors, menu layout, and safe areas only and is not an indication of playback synchronization of the final burned disc.*

Prior to previewing on an external monitor, you'll need to configure your system to use this feature. From the **Options** menu, choose **Preferences** and then click the **Video Device** tab to configure an external monitor. Your video will be sent to this device when you click the **Preview on External Monitor** button () in the Video Preview window. *For more information, see [Video Device tab](#) on page 165.*

Previewing video on a secondary Windows display

If your Windows desktop is extended across multiple displays, you can use one of those displays to preview your project.

Important: *If you intend to deliver your project in an interlaced format, previewing on a computer monitor is not a substitute for previewing on an interlaced broadcast monitor.*



Windows secondary display preview requirements:

- A multiple-output graphics card that supports 3D acceleration (or multiple graphics cards: you could install AGP and PCI video cards in your system, for example).

You can also use the Windows Secondary Display device on a computer with a single monitor. When you enable the external monitor, the video preview will fill your screen.

- A CRT, LCD, or projector connected to your computer's secondary video output.
- The **Extend my Windows desktop onto this monitor** check box must be selected on the **Settings** tab or the Display Properties dialog (Start > Settings > Control Panel > Display).

Configuring a secondary Windows display

1. Use the **Video Device** tab in the Preferences dialog to configure the display you want to use as a video preview monitor. *For more information, see [Configuring a Windows Secondary Display](#) on page 166.*
2. Click the **Preview on External Monitor** button () in the Video Preview window.
You can turn off external preview by clicking the secondary display and pressing Esc.
3. To end the preview and return to the main window, click the **Close** button ().

Previewing video on an external monitor via IEEE-1394

You can send video directly from the timeline to a television monitor. With this feature, you can make your final editing decisions on a broadcast monitor (which differs significantly from a computer monitor) before preparing or burning your project.

IEEE-1394 external monitor requirements:

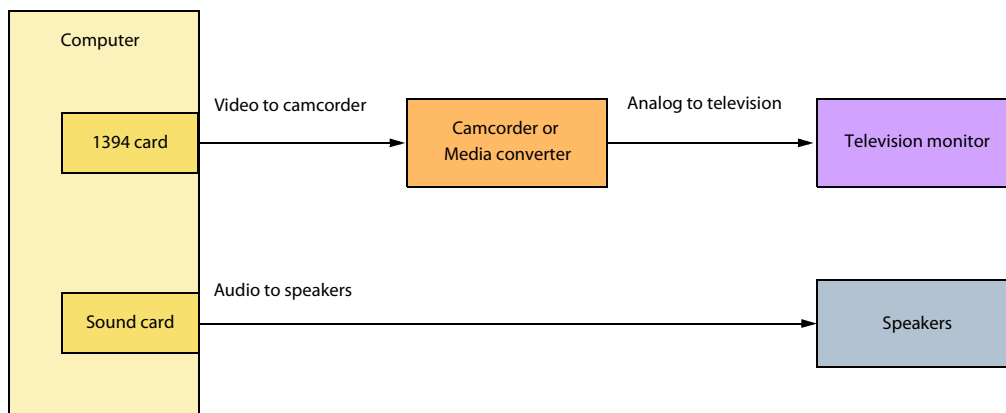
- OHCI-compliant i.Link® (also known as FireWire® or IEEE-1394) DV card
- DV camcorder or DV-to-analog converter box

While configuring your computer for DV external monitor previewing is not difficult, the setup may require some troubleshooting. The Sony Creative Software Inc. forum is a good resource for peer-to-peer system troubleshooting:

<http://www.sonycreativesoftware.com/forums>

Hardware setup



The diagram below shows the preferred setup for sending video to an external television monitor.



The video conforms to DV format and feeds through the 1394 card to the DV device (camcorder or DV-to-analog media converter). The DV device sends analog output to the television monitor.

Note: *The DV device must support pass-through in order to use an external monitor. Some PAL camcorders do not support this feature.*

Configuring an external monitor

1. Use the **Video Device** tab in the Preferences dialog to configure the display you want to use as a video preview monitor. *For more information, see [Configuring an OHCI-compliant IEEE 1394/DV device](#) on page 166.*
The output is directed to the camcorder through the IEEE-1394 card. You can preview this output on the camcorder's LCD screen or connect the camera to a television monitor to preview the output there. Once you have verified that the external monitor settings are working correctly, you can use it to preview your project.
2. Click the **Preview on External Monitor** button () in the Video Preview window.
3. To end the preview and return to the main window, click the **Close** button  **Close** .

Chapter 13: Preparing and Burning Your Project

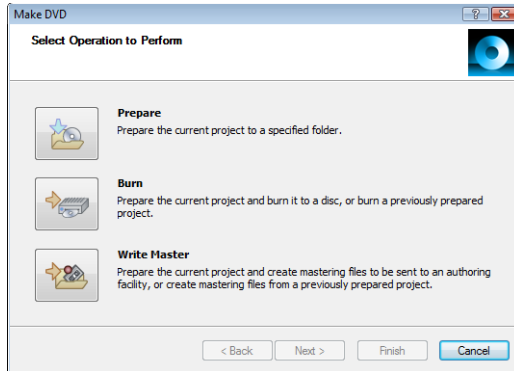
Once you've finished building your project using DVD Architect™ Pro software and are satisfied with the results you see after previewing, you're ready to begin the final stage: preparing and burning your project.

Preparing and burning DVD projects

Preparing a DVD project

During the prepare process, DVD Architect Pro software develops the files and structure necessary to burn your project without actually starting the burning process.

1. Click the **Make DVD** button . The Make DVD wizard is displayed.






2. Click the **Prepare** button. The Select Prepare Folder page is displayed.
3. In the **Prepare folder** box, type the path to the folder where you want to prepare your project, or click **Browse** to choose a folder.

Note: You can only prepare to a folder that is empty or a folder that you have previously prepared to.

4. If you've previously prepared the project, the Smart prepare section will display the estimated percentage of the project that has not been changed and that can be reused. If you want to turn off smart prepare and prepare the entire project, perform the following steps:
 - a. Click the **Advanced** button. The Smart Prepare Options dialog is displayed.
 - b. Clear the **Enable smart prepare** check box.
 - c. Click the **OK** button to continue.

Tip: Smart prepare technology can drastically reduce project preparation times if you need to edit a portion of your project. When you reprepare your project, only the portions of the project that have changed will be prepared.

- d. Click **Next**.
5. The files in your project are analyzed to ensure that they are ready for burning and a message list is displayed with the results. You can also view the final size of your project.
 - a. Review the messages and make any necessary adjustments.


Message Type	Description
 Informational	Produces a valid DVD and does not require any action.
 Warning	Produces a valid DVD and does not require any action.
 Error	Produces an invalid DVD and must be resolved.

- b. Click the **Optimize** button to display the Optimize Disc dialog where you can make changes to individual media file and project settings (often allowing you to resolve warnings or errors). *For more information, see [Optimizing your project on page 39](#).*
 - c. Click the **Next** button.
6. The subtitle and menu highlight mask files in your project are analyzed to ensure that they are ready for burning and a message list is displayed with the results. Review the messages and make any necessary adjustments.
 7. Click the **Finish** button. Your project is rendered to the folder you specified.
 8. The application displays a dialog box indicating that the prepare completed successfully; click the **OK** button to continue.

Burning a DVD project

DVD Architect Pro allows you to burn current projects, previously prepared projects, or previously mastered projects. *For information about preparing a project, see [Preparing a DVD project on page 151](#). For more information about mastering, see [Writing a master for replication on page 155](#).*




Warning: *If you have a display device that is susceptible to burn-in (such as a rear-projection television), do not use static text or bright static graphics in any scene that will be displayed on screen for an extended period of time.*

1. Click the **Make DVD** button . The Make DVD wizard is displayed.
2. Click the **Burn** button. The Select Prepare Folder page is displayed.
3. Choose the location where you want to prepare your project or the location of an already-prepared or mastered project that you want to burn.

Note: *You can only prepare to a folder that is empty or a folder that you have previously prepared to.*

Option	Description
Current project	<p>Select the Current project radio button and type the path to the folder where you want to prepare your project in the Prepare/Burn folder box (or click Browse to choose a folder).</p> <p>If you've previously prepared the project, the Smart prepare section will display the estimated percentage of the project that has not been changed and that can be reused. If you want to turn off smart prepare and prepare the entire project, perform the following steps:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the Advanced button. The Smart Prepare Options dialog is displayed. 2. Clear the Enable smart prepare check box. 3. Click the OK button to continue. <p>Tip: <i>Smart prepare technology can drastically reduce project preparation times if you need to edit a portion of your project. When you reprepare your project, only the portions of the project that have changed will be prepared.</i></p>
Previously prepared folder	Select the Previously prepared folder radio button and type the path to the folder that contains a prepared project in the Prepared folder box (or click Browse to choose a folder).
Previously mastered folder	Select the Previously mastered folder radio button to burn a previously mastered project. Type the path to the folder that contains a previously mastered project in the Mastered folder box (or click Browse to choose a folder).


4. Click the **Next** button.
5. If you selected the **Current project** radio button in step 3, DVD Architect Pro software displays a list of messages about your project and estimates the project's final size on the Review Message List page.
 - a. Review the messages and make any necessary adjustments.

Message Type	Description
 Informational	Produces a valid DVD and does not require any action.
 Warning	Produces a valid DVD and does not require any action.
 Error	Produces an invalid DVD and must be resolved.

- b. Click the **Optimize** button to display the Optimize Disc dialog where you can make changes to individual media files and project settings (often allowing you to resolve warnings or errors). *For more information, see [Optimizing your project](#) on page 39.*
 - c. Click the **Next** button.
6. The subtitle and menu highlight mask files in your project are analyzed to ensure that they are ready for burning and a message list is displayed with the results. Review the messages and make any necessary adjustments.

7. Select the burn parameters:

- a. In the **Volume name** box, type the name of your disc.
- b. From the **Device** drop-down list, choose your DVD/Blu-ray Disc™ burner or **ISO Image Writer**.
- c. Perform one of the following actions:

If	Then
You chose your DVD burner	In the Speed drop-down list, choose your burning speed.
You chose ISO Image Writer	In the File name field, click the  button to browse to the location where you would like to save the file.

- d. Select the **Advanced** button to display the Advanced Burn Parameters dialog. The Drive Info tab lists information about the drive to which the disc will be burned. The Media Info tab lists information about the type of media currently in your burner. The Labels tab has information about the volume name, volume set name, and application ID, which you can adjust if necessary. Click **OK** to return to the Select Burn Parameters page.
- e. If you're using a -RW disc, you can select one of the **Erase mode** radio buttons to erase the disc before burning.

Option	Description
Do not erase	Does not erase the contents of the disc.
Quick erase	Erases only the table of contents.
Full erase	Erases all data from the disc.

- f. Select the **Burn disc** radio button if you want to burn your project, or select the **Test only** button to perform a test burn without activating your burner's laser.

Note: Test burns are not available with single- or dual-layer discs using +R/+RW media.

- 8. Click the **Finish** button to start burning.
- 9. When burning a previously mastered folder, after clicking the **Finish** button, click **Continue** to burn the next mastered layer.

Note: When burning a dual-layer mastered project, each layer must be burned to separate discs. You cannot burn both layers to one dual-layer disc.

10. If you are preparing and burning a dual-layer disc, the Choose Layer Break Behavior page is displayed to allow you to choose if you want to choose a layer break or if you would like the software to choose a break for you.

- a. Select one of the following options:

Option	Description
Choose a layer break point automatically	The software will choose a layer break for you. Tip: If the layer break must occur in a compilation, you'll be unable to burn your project. To resolve the situation, try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reordering title may allow a suitable layer break to be found. For more information, see Editing title order on page 52. • Changing the length of slides in the compilation may allow a suitable layer break to be found. For more information, see Setting display duration from the Picture Compilation Properties window on page 92.
Prompt me to choose a layer break point only if the break must be placed within a title	After the project is prepared, the software will interrupt the mastering process to prompt you to choose a layer break point if a break point cannot be placed at the beginning of a title.
Prompt me to choose the layer break point	After the project is prepared, the software will interrupt the mastering process to prompt you to choose a layer break point.

- b. Click the **Finish** button. DVD Architect Pro software prepares the project.
11. If you are burning a dual-layer disc from a prepared project, the Select Layer Break page is displayed to assist you with placing the layer break.

Notes:


- All media after the selected layer break will be placed on the second layer.
- If you're preparing and mastering, the Select Layer Break page will be displayed only if you did not choose the **Choose a layer break point automatically** radio button in step 10 or if the software is unable to find a preferred layer break point.

- a. At the top of the page, select a setting from the drop-down list to indicate whether you want the preferred layer break points or all available layer break points to be displayed. Break points are determined by chapters in your titles:
 - A preferred layer break point occurs at the beginning of a title. These chapter markers are preferred because they will not result in a visible pause when the DVD or Blu-ray Disc player changes layers.
 - If no preferred layer break points are available, you can choose to display all possible layer break points. If you choose a nonpreferred break point, viewers may notice a pause when the player changes layers.
 - If no layer break points are available, you can close the wizard and add a chapter marker manually. The wizard will suggest a title and approximate location.
 - If layer break points are not available in suitable locations, try rearranging the titles in the Project Overview window. By changing the title order, you may be able to achieve that layer break at a more desirable location.
 - b. Select the layer break point that you want to use.
12. The application displays a dialog box prompting you to burn another disc.
- Click the **Yes** button to burn another copy. The application displays the Make DVD - Select Burn Parameters page where you can begin the process again.
 - Click the **No** button if you do not want to burn another copy of your DVD.

Burning 8 cm discs to 12 cm discs


You can burn a camcorder-prepared DVD (8 cm disc) onto a standard DVD (12 cm disc) using DVD Architect Pro. Connect the camcorder via the USB port to the computer and insert a writable DVD into your DVD drive.

Note: To locate the camcorder's USB connection, please review the camcorder's user instructions.

1. Click the **Make DVD** button . The Make DVD wizard is displayed.
2. Click the **Burn** button. The Select Prepare Folder page is displayed.
3. Select the **Previously prepared folder** radio button and click Browse to choose the USB drive.

Note: The DVD must be finalized in the camcorder before the disc can be copied.

4. Click the **Next** button.
5. Select the burn parameters:
 - a. In the **Volume name** box, type the name of your disc.
 - b. From the **Device** drop-down list, choose your DVD burner or **ISO Image Writer**.
 - c. Perform one of the following actions:

If	Then
You chose yo.ur DVD burner	In the Speed drop-down list, choose your burning speed.
You chose ISO Image Writer	In the File name field, click the  button to browse to the location where you would like to save the file.
 - d. Select the **Advanced** button to display the Advanced Burn Parameters dialog. The Drive Info tab lists information about the drive to which the DVD will be burned. The Media Info tab lists information about the type of media currently in your DVD burner. The Labels tab has information about the volume name, volume set name, and application ID, which you can adjust if necessary. Click **OK** to return to the Select Burn Parameters page.

- e. Select the **Burn disc** radio button if you want to burn your project, or select the **Test only** button to perform a test burn without activating your burner's laser.
 - f. Select the **Eject disc when done** box so the DVD drive will open when the burn is completed.
6. Click the **Finish** button to start burning.
 7. The application displays a dialog box prompting you to burn another disc.
 - Click the **Yes** button to burn another copy. The application displays the Make DVD - Select Burn Parameters page where you can begin the process again.
 - Click the **No** button if you do not want to burn another copy of your DVD.


Writing a master for replication

DVD Architect Pro software allows you to create a disc master for replication



Mastering is not available for Blu-ray Disc projects.




Warning: If you have a display device that is susceptible to burn-in (such as a rear-projection television), do not use static text or bright static graphics in any scene that will be displayed on screen for an extended period of time.

1. Click the **Make DVD** button . The Make DVD wizard is displayed.
2. Click the **Write Master** button.
3. On the Select Prepare Folder page, choose the location where you want to prepare your project or the location of an already-prepared project that you want to burn.

Note: You can only prepare to a folder that is empty or a folder that you have previously prepared to.

Option	Description
Current project	<p>Select the Current project radio button and type the path to the folder where you want to prepare your project in the Prepare/Burn folder box (or click Browse to choose a folder).</p> <p>If you've previously prepared the project, the Smart prepare section will display the estimated percentage of the project that has not been changed, which can be reused. If you want to turn off smart prepare and prepare the entire project, perform the following steps:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the Advanced button. The Smart Prepare Options dialog is displayed. 2. Clear the Enable smart prepare check box. 3. Click the OK button to continue. <p>Tip: Smart prepare technology can drastically reduce project preparation times if you need to edit a portion of your project. When you reprepare your project, only the portions of the project that have changed will be prepared.</p>
Previously prepared folder	<p>Select the Previously prepared folder radio button and type the path to the folder that contains a prepared project in the Prepared folder box (or click Browse to choose a folder).</p>

4. Click the **Next** button.
5. If you selected the **Current project** radio button in step 3, DVD Architect Pro software displays a list of messages about your project and estimates the project's final size on the Review Message List page.
 - a. Review the messages and make any necessary adjustments.

Message Type	Description
 Informational	Produces a valid DVD and does not require any action.
 Warning	Produces a valid DVD and does not require any action.
 Error	Produces an invalid DVD and must be resolved.

- b. Click the **Optimize** button to display the Optimize Disc dialog where you can make changes to individual media file and project settings (often allowing you to resolve warnings or errors). *For more information, see [Optimizing your project on page 39](#).*
 - c. Click the **Next** button.
6. The subtitle and menu highlight mask files in your project are analyzed to ensure that they are ready for burning and a message list is displayed with the results. Review the messages and make any necessary adjustments.
7. On the Update Mastering Properties page, you can choose to update the settings from the Project Properties dialog.
- a. Click the **Copy Protection** button at the top of the dialog and choose your copy protection settings. *For more information, see [Copy protection on page 36](#).*
 - b. Click the **Regions** button at the top of the dialog and choose the region settings for your disc. *For more information, see [Regions on page 37](#).*

Note: *Region information is not encoded on DVDs you burn with DVD Architect Pro software; the software sets a region flag that is encoded by a replication facility.*

- c. Click the **Mastering** button at the top of the dialog and choose your mastering settings. *For more information, see [Mastering on page 37](#).*
 - d. Click the **Next** button.
8. On the Select Mastering Output Parameters page, choose your mastering settings:
- a. In the **Volume name** box, type the name of your disc.
 - b. From the **Device** drop-down list, choose your hard drive or your DLT (digital linear tape) drive.
 - c. If you're saving your master to a file on disk, type the path to the folder you want to use, or click the **Browse** button to choose a folder.
 - d. If you selected your DLT drive from the **Device** drop-down list and need to erase the tape, select the **Erase first, then write to tape** check box. A dialog box confirming that you want to erase the tape is displayed; click the **Yes** or **No** button to continue.

Note: *Erasing the tape may take a long time and oftentimes cannot be canceled.*

- e. Click the **Next** button.
9. If you are preparing and mastering a dual-layer disc, the Choose Layer Break Behavior page is displayed to allow you to choose if you want to choose a layer break or if you would like the software to choose a break for you.
- a. Select one of the following options:

Option	Description
Choose a layer break point automatically	The software will choose a layer break for you.
	<p>Tip: <i>If the layer break must occur in a compilation, you'll be unable to burn your project. To resolve the situation, try the following:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Reordering title may allow a suitable layer break to be found. For more information, see Editing title order on page 52.</i> • <i>Changing the length of slides in the compilation may allow a suitable layer break to be found. For more information, see Setting display duration from the Picture Compilation Properties window on page 92.</i>
Prompt me to choose a layer break point only if the break must be placed within a title	After the project is prepared, the software will interrupt the mastering process to prompt you to choose a layer break point if a break point cannot be placed at the beginning of a title.
Prompt me to choose the layer break point	After the project is prepared, the software will interrupt the mastering process to prompt you to choose a layer break point.

- b. Click the **Finish** button. DVD Architect Pro software prepares the project.

10. If you are mastering a dual-layer disc from a prepared project, the Select Layer Break page is displayed to assist you with where to place the layer break.

Notes:

- All media after the selected layer break will be placed on the second layer.
- If you're preparing and mastering, the Select Layer Break page will be displayed only if you did not choose the **Choose a layer break point automatically** radio button in step 10 or if the software is unable to find a preferred layer break point.

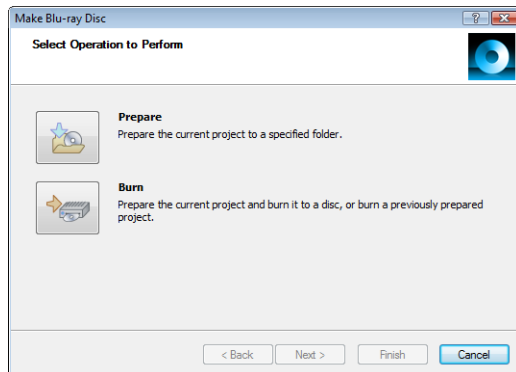
- a. At the top of the page, select a setting from the drop-down list to indicate whether you want the preferred layer break points or all available layer break points to be displayed. Break points are determined by chapters in your titles:
 - A preferred layer break point occurs at the beginning of a title. These chapter markers are preferred because they will not result in a visible pause when the DVD or Blu-ray Disc player changes layers.
 - If no preferred layer break points are available, you can choose to display all possible layer break points. If you choose a nonpreferred break point, viewers may notice a pause when the player changes layers.
 - If no layer break points are available, you can close the wizard and add a chapter marker manually. The wizard will suggest a title and approximate location.
 - If layer break points are not available in suitable locations, try rearranging the titles in the Project Overview window. By changing the title order, you may be able to achieve that layer break at a more desirable location.
 - b. Select the layer break point that you want to use.
11. Click the **Finish** button to start preparing, if necessary, and writing your mastering files.
 12. The application displays a dialog box indicating that the mastering completed successfully; click the **OK** button to continue.

Preparing and burning Blu-ray Disc projects

Preparing a Blu-ray Disc project




During the prepare process, DVD Architect Pro software develops the files and structure necessary to burn your project without actually starting the burning process.

1. Click the **Make Blu-ray Disc** button . The Make Blu-ray Disc wizard is displayed.



2. Click the **Prepare** button. The Select Image page is displayed.
3. In the **Prepare image** box, type the path to the image file (.iso) where you want to prepare your project, or click **Browse** to choose a location.
4. Click **Next**.
5. The files in your project are analyzed to ensure that they are ready for burning and a message list is displayed with the results. You can also view the final size of your project.

- a. Review the messages and make any necessary adjustments.


Message Type	Description
 Informational	Produces a valid disc and does not require any action.
 Warning	Produces a valid disc and does not require any action.
 Error	Produces an invalid disc and must be resolved.

- b. Click the **Optimize** button to display the Optimize Disc dialog where you can make changes to individual media file and project settings (often allowing you to resolve warnings or errors). *For more information, see [Optimizing your project on page 39](#).*
6. Click the **Finish** button. Your project is prepared as an image file (.iso) in the folder you specified. The application displays a dialog box indicating that the prepare completed successfully; click the **OK** button to continue.

Burning a Blu-ray Disc project




DVD Architect Pro allows you to burn current projects or previously prepared projects. *For information about preparing a project for burning, see [Preparing a Blu-ray Disc project on page 157](#).*

Warning: *If you have a display device that is susceptible to burn-in (such as a rear-projection television), do not use static text or bright static graphics in any scene that will be displayed on screen for an extended period of time.*

1. Click the **Make Blu-ray Disc** button . The Make Blu-ray Disc wizard is displayed.
2. Click the **Burn** button. The Select Image page is displayed.
3. Choose the location where you want to prepare your project or the location of an already-prepared image that you want to burn.

Option	Description
Current project	Select the Current project radio button and type the path to the folder where you want to prepare your project in the Prepare/burn image box (or click Browse to choose a folder).
Previously prepared image	Select the Previously prepared image radio button and type the path to the folder that contains a prepared image in the Prepare/burn image box (or click Browse to choose an image).

4. Click the **Next** button.
5. If you selected the **Current project** radio button in step 3, DVD Architect Pro displays a list of messages about your project and estimates the project's final size on the Review Message List page.
 - a. Review the messages and make any necessary adjustments.

Message Type	Description
 Informational	Produces a valid disc and does not require any action.
 Warning	Produces a valid disc and does not require any action.
 Error	Produces an invalid disc and must be resolved.

- b. Click the **Optimize** button to display the Optimize Disc dialog where you can make changes to individual media files and project settings (often allowing you to resolve warnings or errors). *For more information, see [Optimizing your project on page 39](#).*
 - c. Click the **Next** button.
6. Select the burn parameters:
 - a. In the **Volume name** box, type the name of your disc.
 - b. From the **Device** drop-down list, choose your Blu-ray Disc burner or **ISO Image Writer**.
 - c. In the **Speed** drop-down list, choose your burning speed.

- d. Select the **Advanced** button to display the Advanced Burn Parameters dialog. The Drive Info tab lists information about the drive to which the disc will be burned. The Media Info tab lists information about the type of media currently in your burner. Click **OK** to return to the Select Burn Parameters page.
- e. If you're using a -RE disc, then you can select one of the **Erase mode** radio buttons to erase the disc before burning.

Option	Description
Do not erase	Does not erase the contents of the disc.
Quick erase	Erases only the table of contents.
Full erase	Erases all data from the disc.

- f. Select the **Burn disc** radio button if you want to burn your project, or select the **Test only** button to perform a test burn without activating your burner's laser.

Note: *Test burns are not available when using BD-RE media.*

- 7. Click the **Finish** button to start burning.
- 8. When burning a previously prepared dual-layer image, after clicking the **Finish** button, click **Continue** to burn the next layer. The layer break is selected automatically.
- 9. The application displays a dialog box prompting you to burn another disc.
 - Click the **Yes** button to burn another copy. The application displays the Make Blu-ray Disc - Select Burn Parameters page where you can begin the process again.
 - Click the **No** button if you do not want to burn another copy of your project.

Chapter 14 Customizing DVD Architect Pro Software

You can customize DVD Architect™ Pro software to suit your project needs and working preferences. In this chapter, you will find information about functions that allow you to customize the appearance of DVD Architect Pro software and set the application's preferences.

Changing grid settings

The workspace's grid allows you to arrange and align objects on your menus more precisely. You can also customize the grid's properties, such as color, size, or position.

To view or change grid settings, choose **Grid Settings** from the **Options** menu. The Grid Settings dialog is displayed. The items on this dialog are explained below.

Tip: If you will use the same grid settings on most projects, select the **Start all new projects with these settings** check box at the bottom of the Grid Settings dialog.

Setting	Description
Width	Sets the width of grid squares.
Height	Sets the height of grid squares.
X offset	Sets the horizontal center offset for the placement of the grid.
Y offset	Sets the vertical center offset for the placement of the grid.
Lock sizes	Locks the grid size so the height and width are equal.
Color	Sets the red, green, blue, and alpha channels for your grid.
Start all new projects with these settings	Use the grid settings you have specified whenever a new project is created.
Show grid	Displays the grid in the workspace.

Saving and recalling window layouts

A window layout stores the sizes and positions of all windows and floating window docks in the DVD Architect Pro workspace.

You can store any number of window layouts on your computer, and up to ten window layouts are available in the View menu (and via keyboard shortcuts) so you can quickly recall frequently used layouts.

Notes: Window layouts are saved in the C:\Documents and Settings\Your Username\Application Data\Sony\DVD Architect Pro\5.0 folder (C:\Users\Your Username\AppData\Roaming\Sony\DVD Architect Pro\5.0\ in Windows Vista™). You can transfer layouts between computers by copying the .DVDArchWindowLayout files.

Saving a window layout

1. Arrange the windows and docked windows as desired.

Tip: Press **Ctrl+Alt+D**, release the keys, and then press a number on your keyboard (not the numeric keypad) to save the layout in that space.

2. From the **View** menu, choose **Window Layouts**, and then choose **Save Layout As** from the submenu. The Save Layout As dialog is displayed.
Choose **Save Layout** from the submenu if you want to update the current window layout. A bullet is displayed next to the current layout.
3. In the **Name** box, type the name you want to use to identify the layout. This name will be used in the Organize Layouts dialog.
4. Choose a setting from the **Shortcut** drop-down list to set the shortcut that will be used to load the layout.

For example, if you choose 4, you could press Alt+D, release the keys, and then press 4 on your keyboard to load the layout.

5. The **Folder** box displays the path to the folder where the layout will be saved.

Window layouts are saved in the following folder by default: C:\Documents and Settings\Your Username\Application Data\Sony\DVD Architect Pro\5.0 (C:\Users\Your Username\AppData\Roaming\Sony\DVD Architect Pro\5.0\ in Windows Vista). You can click the **Browse** button to choose a different folder.

6. Click **OK** to save the new layout.

Loading a saved layout

From the **View** menu, choose **Window Layouts**, and then choose the window layout you want to use from the submenu.

Tip: To load a layout quickly, press Alt+D, release the keys, and then press a number on your keyboard (not the numeric keypad) to recall the layout saved in that in that space. If no layout is saved in that space, nothing will happen when you press the shortcut.

If you've modified the current window layout, choose **Window Layouts**, and then choose **Reload Selected Layout** from the submenu to reset the window layout to the last-saved version.

Adding a layout to the View > Window Layouts submenu

1. From the **View** menu, choose **Window Layouts**, and then choose **Organize Layouts** from the submenu. The Organize Layouts dialog is displayed.

2. Select a layout in the **Available layouts in current folder** box.

This box lists the .DVDArchWindowLayout files in the folder displayed in the **Current layout folder** box. If the layout you want to use is saved in a different folder, you can click the **Browse** button to choose a new folder.

3. Select a layout in the **Current layouts in menu** box.
4. Click the **Assign** (or **Replace**) button to add the layout to the **View > Window Layouts** submenu.
You can click the **Move Up** or **Move Down** buttons to change the order of the layouts in the menu.
5. Click the **Activate** button to apply the selected layout to the DVD Architect Pro workspace.
6. Click **OK** to close the Organize Layouts dialog and apply your changes.

Removing a layout from the View > Window Layouts submenu

1. From the **View** menu, choose **Window Layouts**, and then choose **Organize Layouts** from the submenu. The Organize Layouts dialog is displayed.

2. Select a layout in the **Current layouts in menu** box.
3. Click the **Clear** button to remove the selected layout from the **View > Window Layouts** submenu.

If you want to replace the selected layout, select a layout in the **Available layouts in current folder** box and click the **Replace** button.

4. Click **OK** to close the Organize Layouts dialog and apply your changes.

Note: Removing a layout from the **View > Window Layouts** submenu does not remove the .DVDArchWindowLayout file from your computer.

Deleting a layout from your computer

1. From the **View** menu, choose **Window Layouts**, and then choose **Organize Layouts** from the submenu. The Organize Layouts dialog is displayed.
2. Select a layout in the **Current layouts in menu** box.

3. Click the **Delete Layout** button to remove the selected layout from your computer.

Note: You cannot delete a layout that is included in the **Current layouts in menu list**. First, select the layout in the **Current layouts in menu list** and click the **Clear** button. Next, select the layout in the **Available layouts in current folder list** and click the **Delete Layout** button.

4. Click **OK** to close the Organize Layouts dialog and apply your changes.

Using the toolbar

The main toolbar is automatically displayed below the menu bar. However, you may hide and customize the toolbar to suit your preferences. The settings that you apply to the toolbar remain set until you change them again.

Hiding and displaying the toolbar

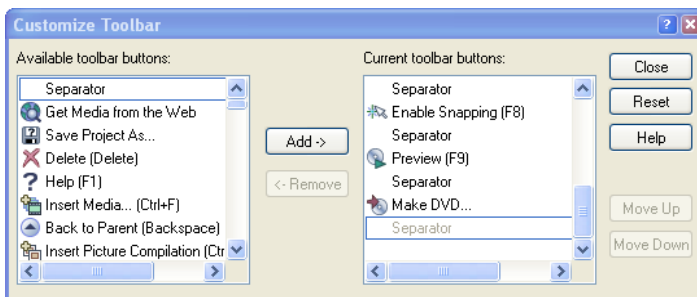
If you prefer to use shortcut keys when working with your project, you may hide the toolbar to create more workspace. Choose **Toolbar** from the **View** menu to hide it. The check mark next to the command is removed and the toolbar disappears. The toolbar remains hidden until you choose **Toolbar** from the **View** menu to display it again.

Reordering toolbar buttons

The main toolbar's button order may be changed to suit your preferences. You can reorder the buttons via the Customize Toolbar dialog.

The Customize Toolbar dialog allows you to control the order and functionality available on the main toolbar. You may return the toolbar to its default settings by clicking the **Reset** button.

1. From the **Options** menu, choose **Customize Toolbar**. The Customize Toolbar dialog is displayed.



2. In the **Current toolbar buttons** list, select the button that you want to move and click the **Move Up** or **Move Down** button.
3. Click **Close** to save the toolbar changes and close the dialog.

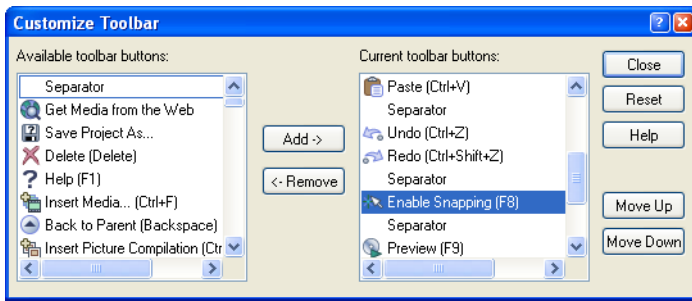
Adding buttons to the toolbar

A series of buttons are available that you may add to the main toolbar. These buttons are listed in the Customize Toolbar dialog. You may also add separators on the toolbar to organize the buttons to suit your preferences.

You may return the toolbar to its default settings by clicking the **Reset** button on the dialog.

1. From the **Options** menu, choose **Customize Toolbar**. The Customize Toolbar dialog is displayed.
2. In the **Available toolbar buttons** list, use the scroll bars to locate the button that you want to add, and then select it.
3. On the **Current toolbar buttons** pane, select the button that you want the newly added button to proceed in order.

For example, if you want to add the **Insert Media** button and want it to precede the **Enable Snapping** button, select the **Enable Snapping** button in the **Current toolbar buttons** list.



4. Click the **Add** button. The new button is added above the selected button in the **Current toolbar buttons** list.

Tip: You may also double-click a button to add it to the toolbar.

5. Click **Close** to save the toolbar settings and close the dialog.

Removing buttons from the toolbar

You may remove buttons and separators from the main toolbar. If you have added buttons to the toolbar, removing unused or unwanted buttons allows you to maximize the toolbar's space. You can remove toolbar buttons via the Customize Toolbar dialog. You may return the toolbar to its default settings by clicking the **Reset** button on this dialog.

1. From the **Options** menu, choose **Customize Toolbar**. The Customize Toolbar dialog is displayed.
2. On the **Current toolbar buttons** pane, select the button that you want to remove.
3. Click **Remove**. The button is removed from the **Current toolbar buttons** pane and will not appear on the toolbar.

Tip: You may also double-click a button to remove it from the toolbar.

4. Click **Close** to save the toolbar settings and exit the dialog.

Setting DVD Architect Pro preferences

The preferences options are different from project properties. Project properties are unique to each project, while preferences affect how the software functions. Any changes that you make to the preferences remain set until you change them again or reset to use the default presets.

You can access the Preferences dialog by choosing **Preferences** from the **Options** menu. This dialog contains six tabbed pages: **General**, **Video**, **Video Device**, **Editing**, **Display**, **Preview**, **Burning**, and **Mastering**. The following sections explain the settings on each tab.

General tab

The General tab includes a variety of settings and allows you to specify general user options.

Preference	Description
Show logo splash screen on startup	Select this check box to briefly show the DVD Architect Pro logo while the program is loading. The logo does not increase loading time.
Use Microsoft DV Reader	Select this check box to use the Microsoft DV codec for displaying and rendering DV. This option can help resolve problems viewing DV.
Double-clicking files in Explorer reapplies theme layout	Select this check box to automatically realign objects according to the current theme when you double-click media files in the Explorer window: the new file is added, and the objects are realigned on the menu. When the check box is cleared, the media files are added to the menu and existing object positions are preserved.
Use best stretching algorithm during rendering	Select this check box if you want bi-cubic stretching to be used during rendering. This setting produces higher-quality images, but rendering time is increased. When the check box is cleared, bi-linear stretching is used.

Preference	Description
Automatically open last project on startup	When check box is selected, the last project that was open when you exited will reopen.
Media goes offline on loss of focus	When this check box is selected, media files are released when DVD Architect Pro software does not have focus. The files will be reloaded when you switch back to DVD Architect Pro software.
Multimedia keyboard support	Select this check box to use a multimedia keyboard to control playback of a project.
Disable popup animations	Select this check box to turn off the animation applied to text boxes when you edit text. This animation helps you locate which text box you're editing.
Automatically link similar audio and video files	Select this check box if you want the software to look for and link audio files with the same base name when you add a video-only file to your project. For example, if you had a video-only MPEG file (MyProject.mpg) and an audio file (MyProject.wav) in the same folder, MyProject.wav will automatically be used as the audio track when you add MyProject.mpg to a menu. Clear the check box if you want to add your audio files manually.
Skip drive database; autodetect drive capabilities	When the check box is cleared, an internal configuration file will be used to determine your drive's capabilities. If you encounter problems burning discs, select this check box, and your drive will be tested to determine its capabilities.
Disable screen saver during preview	Select this check box if you want to suspend your screen saver when you're previewing your project.
Double-clicking themes applies them to all pages of a menu	Select this check box if you want to apply a theme to all pages in a menu when you double-click a theme in the Themes tab. When the check box is cleared, the theme is applied to the current page only.
Automatically name markers	Select this check box if you want DVD Architect Pro software to automatically assign names to markers when you add them to videos. When the check box is cleared, an edit box is displayed after you add a marker. For more information, see Inserting a scene selection menu on page 56.
Display filename labels on media events in trackview	Select this check box if you want to display the names of source files for audio and video events in the Timeline window.
Enable Windows XP Theme support	When this check box is selected, the DVD Architect Pro window will inherit the appearance of the current theme when using Windows XP. When the check box is cleared, user interface elements will maintain the classic Windows appearance.
Check project file type associations at startup	When this check box is selected, DVD Architect Pro will check whether .dar files are associated with DVD Architect Pro software and will prompt you to restore the file association if necessary.
Allow pulldown removal when opening 24p DV	Select this check box if you want to remove pulldown when you open 24 fps progressive-scan DV video files. When the check box is cleared, 24p video is read as 29.97 fps interlaced video (60i).
Always estimate maximum size	When this check box is selected, DVD Architect Pro will estimate the maximum possible size when calculating available disc space for your project. When the check box is cleared, DVD Architect Pro will use the standard estimation method, which provides more accurate results.
Use Direct Sound Surround Mapper	Select this box if your audio has unwanted pops or clicks.
Recently used project list	Select the check box and enter a number in the edit box if you want to list your most recently used projects at the bottom of the File menu.
Default All	Restores the General page to the default settings.


Video tab

The Video tab allows you to choose the graphics editor that you want to use when you choose to edit a graphic in your DVD Architect Pro project.

The **Preferred graphics editor** box displays the path to the application that will be used. Click the **Browse** button to choose a different application, or click the **Clear** button to remove the associated application.

When the **Preferred graphics editor** box is empty, DVD Architect Pro software will use the application associated with the file type when you right-click a graphic and choose **Open in graphics editor** from the shortcut menu.

Video Device tab

This Video Device tab allows you to configure an external monitor. Your video will be sent to this device when you choose **Preview on External Monitor** from the **Options** menu or click the **Preview on External Monitor** button  in the Video Preview window.

Configuring an OHCI-compliant IEEE 1394/DV device

If you have an OHCI-compliant IEEE 1394/DV device, you can configure it to work with DVD Architect Pro software.

1. From the **Options** menu, choose **Preferences** to display the Preferences dialog.
2. Select the **Video Device** tab.
3. In the **Device** drop-down list, select **OHCI-Compliant IEEE 1394/DV**. Information about the device displays in the **Details** area.
4. Use the **Format** controls to adjust the video to display properly on your external monitor.
 - a. Choose the desired format from the **Format** drop-down list.
 - b. Select a radio button to indicate when you want to adjust the output to the selected format.

Setting	Description
Only when the project does not match any DV format	Select this radio button if you want to adjust the video only if the project settings do not conform to a standard DV format.
Always	Select this radio button if you want to adjust the video output to the selected format whenever you preview on the external monitor. Use this setting when you do not have a preview device that supports your required project format. For example, if you're creating a PAL project, but you don't have a PAL monitor, you could use this setting to preview on an NTSC monitor.

5. To replace all custom functions with the default settings, click the **Default All** button.

Configuring a Windows Secondary Display

If you have a Windows secondary display device, you can configure it to work with DVD Architect Pro software.

Note: You can also use the Windows Secondary Display device on a computer with a single monitor. When you enable the external monitor, the preview window will fill your screen.

1. From the **Options** menu, choose **Preferences** to display the Preferences dialog.
2. Select the **Video device** tab.
3. In the **Device** drop-down list, select **Windows Secondary Display**. Information about the device displays in the **Details** area.
4. From the **Display adapter** drop-down list, choose the device where your preview monitor is connected.

You can click the **Identify displays** button to determine which display corresponds to each setting in the drop-down list. A number will be displayed on each monitor.

Note: If the monitor number is displayed in red, the graphics card does not support 3D acceleration or acceleration has been turned off. In Windows, you can go to **Start > Settings > Control Panel > Display > Settings > Advanced > Troubleshoot** to turn on acceleration if your adapter supports it.

5. From the **Display mode** drop-down list, choose the frame size and refresh rate you want to use for the secondary display.

Setting	Description
Use Current Settings	Video is displayed using the monitor's resolution and refresh rate specified in the Windows Display Properties control panel.
Automatic Size Settings	The software will attempt to choose the optimum resolution and refresh rate. This setting overrides the Windows Display Properties setting as long as the secondary display window is active.
Pick Custom Settings	You can choose the resolution and refresh rate you want to use. This setting overrides the Windows Display Properties setting as long as the secondary display window is active.

6. Select the **Scale output to fit display** check box if you want the video preview to fill the display.

7. Select the **Apply deinterlace filter** check box if you're previewing interlaced video on a noninterlaced display. This filter can reduce the artifacts you often see on the edges of moving areas.

Note: *The Apply deinterlace filter check box will be unavailable if your video adapter does not support pixel shading.*

8. If you want to adjust color reproduction for video previews, use the color management controls.
 - a. Select the **Use color management** check box.
 - b. Select the **Use Studio RGB** check box if your source media conforms to studio RGB color (black=16 and white=235) and you will be previewing on your computer's CRT or LCD monitor. When the check box is selected, the studio RGB range is expanded to 0 to 255 to conform to a computer display.

Clear the check box if you will be previewing on a TV monitor or if your source media does not conform to studio RGB color.

- c. From the **Monitor color profile** drop-down list, choose the color profile that best matches your display.

You can obtain ICC/ICM color profiles from the display manufacturer, or you can create your own if you have a calibration system.

Note: *The Use color management check box will be unavailable if your video adapter does not support gamma adjustment.*

9. To replace all custom functions with the default settings, click the **Default All** button.

Editing tab

The Editing tab allows you to specify options for editing your project.

Preference	Description
Action safe area (%)	Allows you to specify a percentage for the border size in the video's safe area. Video within this safe area will always be visible on a television monitor. The Safe Action borders are displayed when you choose Show Action Safe Area from the Options menu.
Title safe area (%)	Allows you to specify a percentage for the border size in the video's safe title area. Video within this safe area will always be visible on a television monitor. The Safe Title borders are displayed when you choose Show Title Safe Area from the Options menu.
Paste offset	Type values in the X and Y boxes if you want to offset items when you paste them. If you enter 0 in both boxes, objects will be pasted directly over the source object when you copy and paste in the same menu.
Brightness/contrast modifier (%)	Allows you to control how much brightness/contrast is added or subtracted when you click on the increase/decrease contrast, increase/decrease brightness and increase/decrease contrast center buttons.
Limit number of undo buffers to (0 to 9999)	Select this check box and type a number in the box if you want to limit the number of undo buffers that will be created. Reducing the number of undo buffers can conserve memory.
Default All	Restores the Editing page to the default settings.







Display tab

The Display tab allows you to specify options for the appearance of the DVD Architect Pro workspace.

Preference	Description
Icon color saturation	Drag the slider to adjust the color intensity of icons in the DVD Architect Pro window. Drag to the left to decrease the color saturation, or drag to the right to increase it.
Icon color tint	Drag the slider to adjust the amount of tinting that is applied to the icons in the DVD Architect Pro window. Drag the slider to the right to add an average of the Windows title bar colors to the icons. Drag to the left to decrease the amount of tinting applied. Tip: You can use the Display Properties control panel to change your active window title bar colors. In Windows 2000, open the Display Properties control panel and select the Appearance tab. Then choose Active Title Bar from the Item drop-down list. In Windows XP, open the Display Properties control panel and select the Appearance tab. Then click the Advanced button and choose Active Title Bar from the Item drop-down list.
Selected item color	Click to display a color picker, where you can set the color for selected items in the workspace using red, green, blue, and alpha values.
Button overlap color 1	Click to display a color picker, where you can set the color for buttons that overlap in the DVD Architect Pro workspace using red, green, blue, and alpha values.
Button overlap color 2	Click to display a color picker, where you can set the color for buttons that overlap in the DVD Architect Pro workspace using red, green, blue, and alpha values.
Default All	Restores the Display page to the default settings.

Preview tab

The Preview tab allows you to specify options for previewing your projects.

Preference	Description
Fast forward/rewind amount	Type a value in the box to specify how far playback will be advanced/reversed when you click the  and  buttons while previewing your project.
Super fast forward/rewind amount	Type a value in the box to specify how far playback will be advanced/reversed when you click the  and  buttons while previewing your project.
Region	Choose a region code from the drop-down list to indicate the region to be used during project previews.  Region codes are not available for Blu-ray Disc projects.
Aspect ratio	Choose an aspect ratio from the drop-down list to indicate whether your project should be previewed in standard (4:3) or widescreen (16:9) format by default.
Parental control	Choose a parental management level from the drop-down list to simulate for project previews.  Parental control is not available for Blu-ray Disc projects.
Menu	Choose a menu language from the drop-down list to specify the default language for your disc menus while previewing your project.
Audio	Choose an audio language from the drop-down list to specify the default language for your audio tracks while previewing your project.
Subtitles	Choose a subtitle language from the drop-down list to specify the default language for subtitles while previewing your project.
Default All	Restores the Preview page to the default settings.


Burning tab

The Burning tab allows you to specify options for project preparation and burning.

Preference	Description
Free space display type	Choose a setting from the drop-down list to choose how your project size is represented in the bottom-right corner of the window (as Disc Space Used).
Default prepare folder	Displays the path to the folder where DVD Architect Pro software will prepare your project. Click the Browse button to choose a different folder.
Temporary files folder	Displays the path to the folder where DVD Architect Pro software will store temporary files it creates. Click the Browse button to choose a different folder.
Minimum video bit rate	Allows you to specify the minimum allowed bit rate that will be used when DVD Architect Pro software compresses the selected video.
Default All	Restores the Burning page to the default settings.

Mastering tab

The Mastering tab allows you to specify options for project preparation and mastering.

Preference	Description
Mastering output folder	Displays the path to the folder where DVD Architect Pro software will master your project output. Click the Browse button to choose a different folder.
	 Mastering is not available for Blu-ray Disc projects.
Default All	Restores the Mastering page to the default settings.

Appendix A Shortcuts

Keyboard shortcuts

Project file

Press	Result
Ctrl+N	Create a new project.
Ctrl+O	Open an existing project.
Ctrl+S	Save modified project back to the file.
Alt+Enter	Display the Project Properties dialog.
Alt+F4	Exit the application.

Magnification and view

Press	Result
Alt+0	Set input focus to the workspace.
Alt+1	Show/hide editing toolbar.
Alt+2	Show/hide text toolbar.
Alt+3	Show/hide Explorer window.
Alt+4	Show/hide Themes window.
Alt+5	Show/hide Buttons window.
Alt+6	Show/hide Backgrounds window.
Alt+7	Show/hide Compilation window.
Alt+8	Show/hide Properties window.
Alt+9	Show/hide Timeline window.
Ctrl+Alt+1	Show/hide Project Overview window.
F11	Show/hide bottom panel.
Shift+F11	Show/hide side panel.
Ctrl+G	Show/hide grid.
Ctrl+B	Show/hide button masks.
Home/End	Show first/last page.
Page Up/Page Down	Show previous/next page.
Alt+D, then press 0-9	Recall window layout.
Ctrl+Alt+D, then press 0-9	Save window layout.

General editing

Press	Result
Ctrl+Z	Undo last action.
Ctrl+Shift+Z	Redo last action.
Ctrl+X	Cut
Ctrl+C	Copy
Ctrl+V	Paste
Delete	Delete
Ctrl+A	Select All
F2	Edit selected text.
Ctrl+Home/End	Move object to top/bottom.
Up Arrow/Down Arrow	Move selected objects up/down by grid spacing.
Ctrl+Page Up/Page Down	Move object forward/back.
Right Arrow/Left Arrow	Move selected objects right/left by grid spacing.
D	Switch to next editing tool.
Shift+D	Switch to previous editing tool.
Ctrl+D	Selection tool
Ctrl+Shift+G	Edit grid settings.
F8	Enable snapping.
Ctrl+F8	Snap to grid.
Shift+F8	Snap to objects.
Ctrl+Shift+F8	Snap to safe areas.

Inserting objects and titles

Press	Result
Ctrl+T	Insert text.
Ctrl+M	Insert submenu.
Ctrl+L	Insert picture compilation.
Ctrl+K	Insert music/video compilation.
Ctrl+F	Insert media.

Timeline window

Press	Result
Arrow Up/Arrow Down	Zoom in/out.
Home/End	Move cursor to set in/out point.
Ctrl+Home/End	Move cursor to beginning/end of timeline.
Alt+Home/End	Move cursor to beginning/end of viewable area of timeline (when zoomed in).
Left Arrow/Right Arrow	Move cursor left/right.
Tab	Move selection between objects.
Space	Move one frame left/right.
Shift+Space	Preview current title in workspace starting at the set in point.
M	Insert chapter.
I/O	Set in/out points.
L	Set loop point.
Ctrl+Q	Insert audio track.
Ctrl+Shift+Q	Insert video track.
Ctrl+Alt+Q	Insert subtitle track.
Ctrl+Shift+T	Insert subtitle text on active track and make subtitle text editable.
T	Insert subtitle text on all selected tracks without editing text.

Preview

Press	Result
Up Arrow/Down Arrow or Prev Track/Next Track (Windows multimedia keyboard only)	Previous/next chapter or page.
Ctrl+Left Arrow/Right Arrow	Fast forward/reverse.
Ctrl+Left Arrow/Right Arrow	Super fast forward/reverse.
F9	Preview current title in Preview window starting at the timeline cursor position.
Ctrl+F9	Preview disc in Preview window.
Space	Preview current title in Preview window starting at the timeline cursor position.
Shift+Space	Preview current title in workspace starting at the set in point.

Mouse shortcuts

Press	Result
Ctrl+drag object	Copy object.
Shift+drag object	Override snapping.
Alt+drag object	Constrain motion horizontally or vertically.
Ctrl+drag edge of object with sizing tool	Resize object from center.
Shift+drag edge of object with sizing tool	Resize proportionally.
Ctrl+Shift+drag edge of object with sizing tool	Resize object proportionally from center.

Index

Symbols

.sub files, 118

Numerics

1st-play media, 32

A

AC-3 audio, 29

Action safe area, 72

Action safe area (%), 167

Adding

a scene selection menu, 56

audio to music compilation, 82

audio tracks, 113

buttons, 59

files to project, 31

media, 52

music compilation to menu, 52

pages to menu, 46

single-movie object to menu, 52

submenus to project, 45

Adding an existing script to a menu or title, 138

Adding buttons to videos, 109

Adding keyframes, 64

Adjusting

audio recompression settings, 41

object spacing, 71

project-wide settings, 42

video recompression settings, 40

Aligning objects, 71

Animating buttons with keyframes, 111

Animation, 68

Appending a statement to a script, 139

Applying

a highlight mask, 49

color sets, 60

themes, 132

Applying themes, 132

Arranging objects, 67

Aspect ratio, 168

Audio

adding to a music compilation, 82

adjusting recompression, 41

default language, 168

Audio file

music compilation, 82

Audio track number, 143

Audio tracks, 113

adding, 113

changing track colors, 114

replacing, 113

setting for timeline playback, 114

Automatically aligning objects based on current theme, 71

B

Backgrounds window, 18

Blu-ray Disc

preparing, 151

Brightness/contrast modifier (%), 167

Burning

ISO Image Writer, 152

preferences, 168

your project, 151, 152

Burning Blu-ray Disc projects, 158

Burning DVD projects, 152

Button colors

activated, 48, 77

inactive, 48, 77

selected, 48, 76

Button overlap color 1, 168

Button overlap color 2, 168

Button properties, 73

Action, 73

Buttons

adding, 59

adding to videos, 109

animating keyframes, 111

choosing color sets, 51

editing, 73

editing order for a video, 110

highlighting, 75

navigation, 78

Navigation tool, 78

properties, 73

buttons on video, 103

Buttons on video markers, 104

Buttons window, 18

C

Centering objects, 71

Changing

menu background media, 48

menu page order, 47

object's size, 60

picture compilation thumbnail size, 94

position of object, 67

Changing interpolation curves between keyframes, 65

Chapter markers

inserting, 104

Chapter number, 143

Choosing color sets for buttons, 51

Choosing media files, 31

Cinescore, 123

Editing existing soundtracks, 123

Generating soundtracks, 123

Color sets, 60

applying, 60

- editing, 60
 - editing subtitle event, 121
 - Command types
 - GotoLabel, 140
 - Link, 140
 - LinkGPRM, 140
 - Nop, 140
 - Resume, 140
 - SetGPRM, 140
 - SetModeGPRM, 140
 - SetStreams, 140
 - Stop, 140
 - Compilation
 - adding images, 89
 - adding text, 93
 - adding to menu, 52
 - deleting text, 93
 - formatting text, 93
 - inserting audio, 94
 - inserting empty slide, 92
 - inserting graphic, 93
 - moving text, 93
 - replacing images, 90
 - rotating images, 91
 - thumbnail display, 94
 - Compilation window, 18
 - Conditions for scripts, 141
 - Configuring external monitor, 150
 - Copying and pasting settings from project to project, 77
 - Copying subtitle event formatting, 120
 - Country code for parental management, 143
 - Creating a graphic subtitle, 117
 - Creating a scene selection menu, 56
 - Creating a script, 138
 - Creating subtitles from regions, 119
 - Crop and video effects keyframes, 64
 - Custom masks, 125
 - creating, 125
 - frame, 126
 - highlight, 127
 - thumbnail, 125
 - Custom menus, 125
 - creating layered .psd menu, 129
 - reapplying layout, 46
 - using layered graphics, 128
 - using single-layered graphics, 131
 - Custom themes, 125
 - creating, 133
 - Customizing DVD Architect, 161
 - grid settings, 161
 - Preferences, 165, 167, 168, 169
 - preferences, 164
 - toolbar, 163
- D**
- Debugging scripts, 141
- D**
- Default prepare folder, 168
 - Deleting
 - markers, 105
 - objects, 72
 - pages from menu, 46
 - Deleting a script, 142
 - Deleting keyframes, 64
 - Deleting text, 84
 - from compilation, 93
 - Disc start item, 32
 - Discs
 - burning, 151
 - preparing, 151
 - Downloading media files from Web, 31
 - DVD
 - burning, 151
 - menu-based, 45
 - music compilation, 81
 - picture compilation, 89
 - preparing, 151
 - setting introduction media, 32
 - setting start item, 32
 - single movie, 103
 - DVD Scripts, 23, 137
 - DVD start script, 142
 - DVD vs. Blu-ray Disc Projects, 30
- E**
- Edit source project, 42
 - Editing
 - button properties, 73
 - color sets, 60
 - formatting text, 55
 - menus, 47
 - preferences, 165, 167, 168
 - subtitle event color set, 121
 - text, 54
 - Editing a command, 140
 - Editing a script's statements in the Script Properties window, 139
 - Editing button order for a video, 110
 - Editing comments, 141
 - Editing crop settings, 65
 - Editing existing soundtracks with Cinescore, 123
 - Editing labels in scripts, 141
 - Editing text, 55
 - Editing toolbar, 16
 - Empty slide
 - inserting, 92
 - End actions
 - media files, 107
 - menus, 50
 - music compilations, 85
 - picture compilations, 95
 - playlists, 101
 - titles, 107

Event
 subtitle, 119, 120

Explorer
 views, 31

Explorer window, 17

Exporting menu as theme, 134
 applying grid theme, 135
 applying positional theme, 134
 grid layout properties, 135
 learning about positional and grid, 134
 saving grid theme, 135
 saving positional theme, 134

Exporting subtitles, 118

External monitor, 149
 configuring, 150
 previewing menu snapshot, 148
 secondary Windows display, 149
 TV, 149
 viewing video on broadcast monitor, 149

F

Fast forward/rewind amount, 168

Files
 adding to project, 31
 choosing, 31
 downloading from Web, 31
 preparing for DVD Architect, 25
 previewing, 31
 recompression, 39

First play media, 32

First-play item, 32

flicker reduction, 47, 85, 94, 106

Formatting
 subtitle event, 120
 text, 54, 55, 84
 text in compilation, 93

Frame masks, 126

Free space display type, 168

Full-screen preview
 on single monitor, 149

G

General preferences, 164

General Purpose Register Memories (GPRM), 143

Generating music with Cinescore, 123

Generating slideshow animation, 90

Generating soundtracks, 123

GotoLabel command type, 140

Graphic
 inserting, 53, 93, 94

Graphics Properties, 53

Grid
 snapping to, 72

Grid layout properties, 135

H

Hiding/showing
 Toolbar, 163

Highlight
 applying to menu, 49

Highlight masks, 127

Highlighted button number, 143

Highlighting buttons, 75

I

Icon color saturation, 168

Icon color tint, 168

IEEE-1394 DV capture cards, 149

I-frames
 marker snapping, 105

Images
 adding to picture compilation, 89
 adjusting brightness and contrast or editing, 83, 92
 inserting in music/video compilation, 82
 replacing, 90
 rotating, 83, 91
 setting stretching or scaling, 83
 stretch type, 91

Images or videos
 replacing, 83

Importing subtitles, 118

In point
 setting, 103

Initial audio language code, 143

Initial audio language code extension, 143

Initial language, 143

Initial subtitle language extension, 143

Inserting
 a graphic, 53
 a scene selection menu, 56
 a setup menu, 58
 audio in compilation, 94
 buttons on video markers, 104
 chapter markers, 104
 empty slide, 92
 graphic in picture compilation, 93
 images or videos in music compilation, 82
 scene/chapter markers, 104
 text, 54

Inserting a graphic subtitle, 117

Inserting a statement in a script, 138

Inserting text, 54

Installing DVD Architect, 11

Interlace flicker, 47, 85, 94, 106

Introduction, 32

Introduction media, 32

K

Karaoke, 143

Keyboard shortcuts
 general editing, 172

- inserting objects and titles, 172
 - magnification and view, 171
 - preview, 173
 - project file, 171
 - Timeline window, 172
 - Keyframe
 - tool, 69
 - Keyframe animation, 111
 - Keyframe tool, 69
 - Keyframes
 - adding, 64
 - changing interpolation curves, 65
 - crop and video effects, 64
 - deleting, 64
 - editing crop settings, 65
 - moving, 65
 - navigating between, 64
 - transformation, 68
- L**
- Layered menu graphics, 128
 - naming requirements for, 128
 - Length
 - adjusting subtitle event, 120
 - Limit number of undo buffers to (0 to 9999), 167
 - Link command type, 140
 - Link GPRM command type, 140
 - Linking a series of videos, 99
 - Loading markers, 105
 - Looping point for menus, 48
- M**
- Main toolbar, 14
 - Main window overview, 13
 - Manual
 - using, 11
 - Markers, 103
 - chapter, 103
 - deleting, 105
 - loading, 105
 - moving, 105
 - renaming, 105
 - saving, 106
 - scene/chapter, 103
 - snapping to I-frames, 105
 - Mask
 - applying to menu, 49
 - Mastering
 - preferences, 169
 - Mastering files, 155
 - Mastering output folder, 169
 - Media
 - adding, 52
 - first play, 32
 - introduction, 32
 - Media files
 - adding to project, 31
 - choosing, 31
 - downloading from Web, 31
 - previewing, 31
 - recompression, 39
 - Media Properties
 - viewing and editing, 66
 - Media properties, 106
 - Audio, 107
 - color sets, 108
 - end action, 107
 - general, 106
 - remote buttons, 108
 - track media, 106
 - Video, 106
 - Menu Page properties, 47
 - Background Media, 48
 - Color Sets, 51
 - End Actions, 50
 - General, 47
 - Remote Buttons, 50
 - Menu-based DVD
 - adding movie title, 103
 - adding music/video compilation, 81
 - adding picture compilation, 89
 - adding playlists, 99
 - Menus
 - adding buttons, 59
 - adding media, 52
 - adding music compilation, 52
 - adding pages, 46
 - adding single-movie object, 52
 - adding submenu from file, 46
 - adding submenus, 45
 - aligning objects, 71
 - applying highlight mask, 49
 - applying themes, 132
 - arranging objects, 67
 - automatically updating objects, 46
 - building, 45
 - changing background media, 48
 - changing page order, 47
 - choosing color sets for buttons, 51
 - custom, 128, 129, 131
 - default language, 168
 - editing properties, 47
 - end actions, 50
 - inserting graphic, 53
 - inserting picture slideshow, 52
 - inserting text, 54
 - looping, 48
 - moving objects, 67
 - scene selection, 56
 - setting length, 47
 - setup, 58

- transitions, 59
- turning remote control buttons off, 50
- Minimum video bit rate, 168
- Monitor
 - external, 150
- Mouse shortcuts, 173
- Movie title
 - adding to a menu, 103
- Moving keyframes, 65
- Moving markers, 105
- Moving objects, 67
- Moving text, 55, 84
 - in compilation, 93
- Music compilation, 81
 - adding audio, 82
 - adding text to track, 83
 - adding to menu, 52
 - adjust brightness and contrast or edit the image, 83
 - deleting text, 84
 - formatting text, 84
 - moving text, 84
 - replacing audio file, 82
 - rotating images, 83
 - setting image stretching or scaling, 83
 - setting thumbnail display, 84
- Music compilation properties
 - General, 85, 106
- Music/video compilation
 - adding to a menu, 81
 - inserting images or videos, 82
 - properties, 85
 - replacing images or videos, 83
- Music/video compilation properties, 85
 - Color Sets, 87
 - End Action, 85
 - Remote Buttons, 86
 - Slide, 86

N

- Navigating between keyframes, 64
- Navigation
 - buttons, 78
 - tool, 78
- Navigation timer, 143
- Navigation timer destination, 143
- Navigation tool, 78
- Nop command type, 140
- NTSC MPEG video, 28

O

- Objects
 - adjusting spacing, 71
 - aligning, 71
 - arranging, 67
 - automatically aligning, 71
 - centering, 71

- changing position, 67
- changing size, 60
- deleting, 72
- moving, 67
- order, 79
- resizing, 60
- setting order, 79
- snapping, 72
- OHCI 1394-IEEE cards, 150
- Online help
 - icon, 12
 - via the web, 12
 - What's This? help, 12
- Opening projects, 30
- Optimizing projects, 39
 - adjusting audio recompression, 41
 - adjusting project settings, 42
 - adjusting video recompression, 40
- Order of objects, 79
- Out point
 - setting, 103

P

- Pages
 - adding buttons, 59
 - adding to menu, 46
 - deleting from menu, 46
 - inserting text, 54
- PAL MPEG video, 29
- Parental control, 168
- Parental management level, 143
- Paste offset, 167
- PCM audio, 28
- Picture compilation, 89
 - adding images, 89
 - adding text, 93
 - adding to a menu, 89
 - adding to menu, 52
 - adjust brightness and contrast or edit the image, 92
 - deleting text, 93
 - formatting text, 93
 - inserting audio, 94
 - inserting empty slide, 92
 - inserting graphic, 93
 - moving text, 93
 - properties, 94
 - replacing images, 90
 - rotating images, 91
 - setting display duration, 92
 - thumbnail display, 94
- Picture compilation properties, 94
 - Color Sets, 97
 - End Action, 95
 - General, 94
 - Remote Buttons, 96
 - Slide, 96

- Track Media, 94
 - Play All, 56
 - Play Chapter, 57
 - Playback
 - timeline, 114
 - Player audio mixing mode for karaoke, 143
 - Player configuration for audio, 143
 - Player configuration for video, 143
 - Player region code, 143
 - Playlist properties, 100
 - End Action, 101
 - Playlist Item, 101
 - Playlists, 22, 99
 - adding titles to, 100
 - adding to menu, 99
 - adding without link, 99
 - deleting titles, 100
 - properties, 100
 - rearranging titles, 100
 - renaming, 100
 - Position
 - changing, 67
 - subtitle event, 119
 - Preferences
 - Burning tab, 168
 - Display tab, 168
 - Editing tab, 167
 - General tab, 164
 - Mastering tab, 169
 - Preview tab, 168
 - setting, 164
 - Video Device tab, 165
 - Video tab, 165
 - Preparing
 - and mastering, 155
 - Blu-ray Disc projects, 157
 - DVD projects, 151
 - files for DVD Architect, 25
 - your project, 151
 - Preview
 - media files, 31
 - menu snapshot on external monitor, 148
 - preferences, 168
 - projects in DVD Architect, 148
 - single-monitor full-screen, 149
 - Previewing video
 - secondary Windows display, 149
 - Project
 - adding files, 31
 - adjusting audio recompression, 41
 - adjusting settings, 42
 - adjusting video recompression, 40
 - burning, 152
 - burning Blu-ray Disc projects, 158
 - burning DVD projects, 152
 - choosing files, 31
 - opening existing, 30
 - optimizing, 39
 - preparing and mastering, 155
 - preparing Blu-ray Disc projects, 157
 - preparing DVD projects, 151
 - previewing, 148
 - previewing menu snapshot on external monitor, 148
 - properties, 32
 - saving, 43
 - saving a copy, 43
 - starting a new, 29
 - workspace, 15
 - Project Overview window, 14
 - Project properties
 - changing, 32
 - Copy protection, 36
 - Disc properties, 32
 - Mastering, 37
 - Regions, 37
 - summary information, 38
 - viewing, 32
 - Properties
 - button, 73
 - changing, 32
 - Video Event, 115
 - viewing, 32
 - Properties window, 19
- ## R
- Region, 168
 - Regions
 - using to create subtitles, 119
 - Remote control buttons
 - turning off, 50
 - Removing a statement from a script, 139
 - Renaming a script, 142
 - Renaming markers, 105
 - Replacing audio
 - files, 82
 - in track, 113
 - Replacing images in compilation, 90
 - Resizing objects, 60
 - Resume command type, 140
 - Rotating images in picture compilation, 91
- ## S
- Safe areas
 - snapping to, 72
 - Saving
 - a project, 43
 - copy of project, 43
 - Saving markers, 106
 - Scene selection menu
 - creating, 56
 - Scene/chapter markers

- inserting, 104
- Script Debugger Pane, 141
- Script Properties window, 139
- Scripting, 137
 - Labels, 141
- Scripts
 - Adding, 138
 - Appending statements, 139
 - Comments, 141
 - Creating, 138
 - Deleting, 142
 - Editing commands, 140
 - Editing statements, 139
 - General Purpose Register Memories, 143
 - Inserting statements, 138
 - Removing statements, 139
 - Renaming, 142
 - Setting conditions, 141
 - Start Script, 142
 - Testing, 141
 - Using, 137
- Selected item color, 168
- Sequential videos, linking, 99
- Set GPRM command type, 140
- SetMode GPRM command type, 140
- SetStreams command type, 140
- Setting
 - DVD Architect software preferences, 164
 - DVD start script, 142
 - first play media, 32
 - image stretching or scaling, 83
 - in and out points, 103
 - loop points, 56
 - menu length, 47
 - object order, 79
 - start item, 32
 - thumbnail size, 94
- Setting music compilation's end action, 85
- Setting up external monitor, 149
- Setup menu, 58
- Shortcuts, 171
 - Keyboard, 171
 - Mouse, 173
- Single-movie DVD, 103
- Single-movie object
 - adding to menu, 52
- Slide
 - inserting empty, 92
- Smart prepare, 151, 155
- Snapping, 72
 - grid, 72
 - objects, 72
 - safe areas, 72
 - to action safe area, 72
 - to title safe area, 72
- Snapping markers to I-frames, 105
- Spacing
 - adjusting, 71
- SPRMS
 - Highlighted button number, 143
- SPRMs
 - Audio track number, 143
 - Chapter number, 143
 - Country code for parental management, 143
 - Initial audio language code, 143
 - Initial audio language code extension, 143
 - Initial language, 143
 - Navigation timer, 143
 - Navigation timer destination, 143
 - Parental management level, 143
 - Player audio mixing mode for karaoke, 143
 - Player configuration for audio, 143
 - Player configuration for video, 143
 - Subtitle track number, 143
 - Title program chain number, 143
 - Video angle number, 143
 - Video title set (VTS) number, 143
- Start item, 32
- Start script, 47
- Statement types
 - Commands, 140
 - Comments, 141
 - Label, 141
- Stop command type, 140
- Stretch type, 91
- SUB files, 118
- Submenus
 - adding from file, 46
 - adding to project, 45
- subtitle event position, 119
- Subtitle properties, 122
 - Color sets, 122
 - Subtitle Event, 122
 - Transformations, 122
- Subtitle track number, 143
- Subtitles, 115
 - adding text, 116
 - adding tracks, 115
 - adjusting event length, 120
 - adjusting event timing, 119
 - changing track colors, 121
 - copying event formatting, 120
 - creating a graphic subtitle, 117
 - creating from Vegas regions, 119
 - default language, 168
 - editing event color set, 121
 - exporting, 118
 - importing, 118
 - inserting a graphic subtitle, 117
 - setting to display automatically, 121

- setting track for timeline playback, 121
- Summary information, 38
- Super fast forward/rewind amount, 168
- System Parameter Register Memories (SPRMs), 143
- System requirements, 11

T

- Temporary files folder, 168
- Testing a script, 141
- Text
 - adding to compilation, 93
 - adding to music compilation, 83
 - deleting, 84, 93
 - editing, 54, 55
 - formatting, 54, 55, 84, 93
 - inserting, 54
 - moving, 55, 84, 93
 - subtitle, 116
- Text toolbar (Alt+2), 16
- Themes, 132
 - alignment to menu objects, 132
 - applying, 132
 - automatically aligning objects, 71
 - creating custom, 133
 - deleting, 133
 - exporting menu as, 134
- Themes window, 17
- Thumbnail
 - masks, 125
 - size, 84, 94
- Timeline, 119
- Timeline playback
 - setting audio track, 114
- Timeline window, 21
- Timing
 - subtitle event, 119
- Title number, 143
- Title program chain number, 143
- Title safe area, 72
- Title safe area (%), 167
- Titles
 - transitions, 59
- Toolbar
 - adding buttons, 163
 - customizing, 163
 - editing, 16
 - hiding/showing, 163
 - main, 14
 - removing buttons, 164
 - reordering buttons, 163
 - text, 16
- Tracks
 - adding audio, 113
 - adding subtitle, 115
 - replacing, 82
 - replacing audio, 113

- setting for timeline playback, 114
- setting subtitle for timeline playback, 121
- Transform bar, 67
- Transformation keyframes, 68
- Transitions
 - between menus or titles, 59
- Trivia Quiz via Scripting, 137

U

- Using Scripting, 137

V

- Video
 - adjusting recompression, 40
 - linking a series, 99
 - previewing on secondary Windows display, 149
 - viewing on broadcast monitor, 149
- Video angle number, 143
- Video Event properties, 115
- Video preview
 - single-monitor full-screen, 149
- Video recompression
 - adjusting settings, 40
- Video title set (VTS) number, 143
- Video tracks, 114
 - adding, 114
 - adding video to, 114
 - changing colors, 115
 - setting timeline playback for, 115
- Viewing and editing media properties, 66

W

- Web
 - downloading media, 31
- Web site
 - accessing help, 12
- Window docking area
 - saving layout, 161
 - saving window layout, 13
- Window Docking Area (F11), 17
 - Backgrounds, 18
 - Buttons, 18
 - Compilation, 18
 - DVD Scripts, 23
 - Explorer, 17
 - Playlists, 22
 - Properties, 19
 - Themes, 17
 - Timeline, 21
- Window layouts
 - deleting, 13
 - recalling, 13
 - saving, 13, 161
- Windows
 - saving layout, 161
- Working with markers, 103

Workspace, 15
 editing toolbar, 16
 saving window layout, 161
 text toolbar, 16

